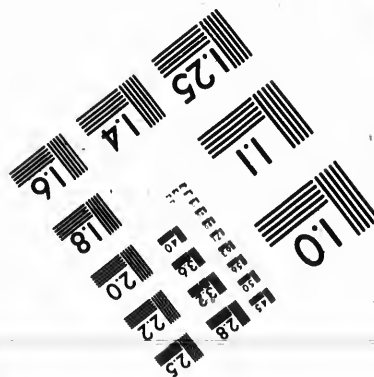
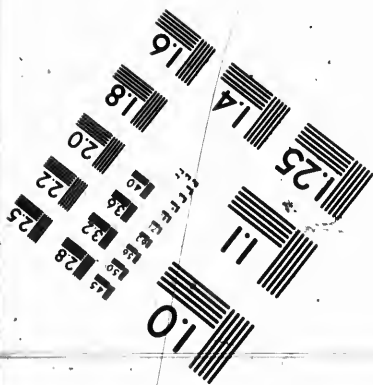
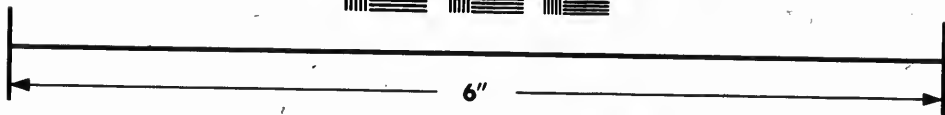
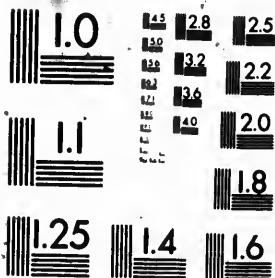


**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0

**CIHM
Microfiche
Series
(Monographs)**

**ICMH
Collection de
microfiches
(monographies)**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

10

© 1991

Technical and Bibliographic Notes / Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur

Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée

Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée

Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque

Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur

Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)

Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur

Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents

Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion
along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la
distorsion le long de la marge intérieure

Blank leaves added during restoration may appear
within the text. Whenever possible, these have
been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées
lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,
mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont
pas été filmées.

Additional comments:/
Commentaires supplémentaires:

Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur

Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées

Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées

Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées

Pages detached/
Pages détachées

Showthrough/
Transparence

Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression

Continuous pagination/
Pagination continue

Includes index(es)/
Comprend un (des) index

Title on header taken from:/
Le titre de l'en-tête provient:

Title page of issue/
Page de titre de la livraison

Caption of issue/
Titre de départ de la livraison

Masthead/
Générique (périodiques) de la livraison

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
				/							

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

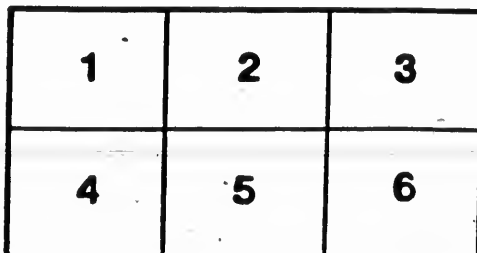
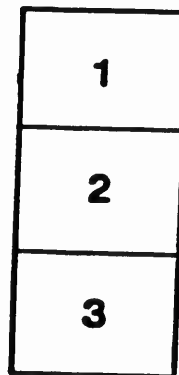
Société du Musée
du Séminaire de Québec

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol \rightarrow (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Société du Musée
du Séminaire de Québec

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole \rightarrow signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

THE
PRINCIPLES
OF
ENGLISH GRAMMAR

CONTAINING

THE SUBSTANCE OF ALL THE MOST APPROVED
ENGLISH GRAMMARS ENTIRELY, BRIEFLY
DEFINED, AND NEATLY ARRANGED;

WITH CONJUNCTIONS

EXERCISES IN PARSING AND SYNTAX.

BY WILLIAM FENNIE.

MONTREAL:

DAWSON BROTHERS.

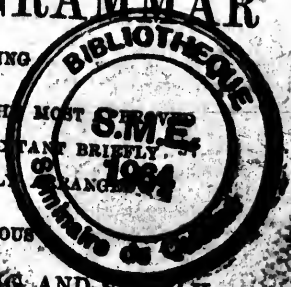
**Bibliothèque,
Le Séminaire de Québec,
3, rue de l'Université,
Québec 4, Q.U.E.**

18

365

THE
PRINCIPLES
OF
ENGLISH GRAMMAR

COMPRISING
THE SUBSTANCE OF ALL THE MOST
ENGLISH GRAMMARS EXISTANT BRIEFLY
DEFINED, AND NEATLY
WITH COPIOUS
EXERCISES IN PARSING AND SYNTAX



BY WILLIAM LENNIE.

MONTREAL:
DAWSON BROTHERS, PUBLISHERS
1890



1824



PREFACE.

It is probable that the original design and principal motive of every teacher, in publishing a school-book, is the improvement of his own pupils. Such, at least, is the immediate object of the present compilation; which, for brevity of expression, neatness of arrangement, and comprehensiveness of plan, is, perhaps, superior to any other book of the kind. "My chief end has been to explain the general principles of Grammar as clearly and intelligibly as possible. In the definitions, therefore, easiness and perspicuity have been sometimes preferred to logical exactness."

Orthography is mentioned rather for the sake of order, than from a conviction of its utility; for, in my opinion, to occupy thirty or forty pages of a Grammar in defining the sounds of the alphabet, is quite preposterous.

On Etymology I have left much to be remarked by the teacher in the time of teaching. My reason for doing this is, that children, when by themselves, labour more to have the words of their book imprinted on their memories, than to have the meaning fixed in their minds; but, on the contrary, when the teacher addresses them *vis a voce*, they naturally strive rather to comprehend his meaning, than to remember his exact expressions. In pursuance of this idea, the first part of this little volume has been thrown into a form more resembling headings, Lectures on Grammar, than a complete elucidation of the subject. That the teacher, however, may not be always under the necessity of having recourse to his memory to supply the deficiencies, the most remarkable observations have been subjoined at the bottom of the page, to which the pupils themselves may occasionally be referred.

The desire of being concise, has frequently induced me to use very elliptical expressions; but I trust they are all sufficiently perspicuous. I may also add, that many additional and critical remarks, which might have, with propriety, been inserted in the Grammar, have been inserted rather in the Key; for I have studiously withheld everything from the Grammar that could be spared, to keep it low-priced for the general good.

The Questions on Etymology, at the one hundred, and seventy-second page, will speak for themselves: they unite the advantages of both the usual methods, *viz.*, that of plain narration, and that of question and answer, without the inconvenience of either.

Syntax is commonly divided into two parts, Concord and Government; and the rules respecting the former, grammarians in general have placed before those which relate to the latter. I have not, however, attended to this division, because I deem it of little importance; but have placed

PREFACE.

those rules first which are either more easily understood, or which more frequently occur. In arranging a number of rules, it is difficult to please every reader. I have frequently been unable to satisfy myself; and, therefore, cannot expect that the arrangement which I have at last adopted, will give universal satisfaction. Whatever order be preferred, the one rule must necessarily precede the other; and, since they are all to be learned, it signifies but little whether the rules of concord precede those of government, or whether they be mixed, provided no anticipations be made which may embarrass the learner.

For exercises on Syntax, I have not only selected the shortest sentences I could find, but printed the lines closely together, with the rules at the bottom, on a small type; and, by these means, have generally compressed as many faulty expressions into a single page, as some of my predecessors have done into two pages of a larger size. Hence, though this book seems to contain but few exercises on bad grammar, it really contains so many, that a separate volume of exercises is quite unnecessary.

Whatever defects were found in the former edition, in the time of teaching, have been carefully supplied.

On Etymology, Syntax, Punctuation, and Prosody, there is scarcely a Rule or Observation in the largest Grammar in print, that is not to be found in this; besides, the Rules and Definitions, in general, are so very short and pointed, that, compared with those in some other Grammars, they may be said to be hit off, rather than made. Every page is independent, and, though quite full, not crowded, but wears an air of neatness and ease invitingly sweet,—a circumstance not unimportant. But, notwithstanding these properties, and others that might be mentioned, I am far from being so vain as to suppose this compilation is altogether free from inaccuracies or defects; much less do I presume that it will obtain the approbation of every one who may choose to peruse it; for, to use the words of Dr. Johnson, "He that has much to do, will do something wrong, and of that wrong must suffer the consequences; and if it were possible that he should always act rightly, yet when such numbers are to judge of his conduct, the bad will censure and obstruct him by malevolence, and the good sometimes by mistake."

27—Those pupils that are capable of WRITING, should be requested to write the PLURAL OF NOUNS, &c., either at home or at school. The Exercises on Syntax should be written in their CORRECTED state, with a stroke drawn UNDER the word corrected.

28—K. means Key; the figures refer to the No. of the Key, not the age.

THE
PRINCIPLES
OF
ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing the English Language with propriety.

It is divided into four parts; namely, *Orthography*, *Etymology*, *Syntax* and *Prosody*.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

ORTHOGRAPHY teaches the nature and powers of letters, and the just method of spelling words.

A LETTER is the least part of a Word.

There are *twenty-six* letters in English.

Letters are either Vowels or Consonants.

A *Vowel* is a letter, the name of which makes a full open sound. The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, w, y*.—The Consonants are *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z*.

A Consonant is a letter that has a sound less distinct than that of a vowel; as, *t, m, p*.

A *Diphthong* is the union of two vowels; as *ou* in *out*.

A *proper Diphthong* is one in which both the vowels are sounded; as, *oy* in *boy*.

An *improper Diphthong* is one in which only one of the two vowels is sounded; as, *o* in *boat*.

A *Triphthong* is the union of three vowels; as, *eau* in *beauty*.

A *Syllable* is a part of a word, or as much as can be sounded at once; as *far* in *far-mer*.

A *Monosyllable* is a word of one syllable; as, *fox*.

A *Dissyllable* is a word of two syllables; as, *Pe-ter*.

A *Trissyllable* is a word of three syllables; as, *but-ter-fly*.

A *Polysyllable* is a word of many syllables.

Why should *judgement*, *abridgement*, &c., be spelled without *e*. How can *g* be soft like *j* without it?—See Walker's Dictionary, under *judgment*.

ETYMOLOGY.

ETYMOLOGY treats of the different sorts of Words, their various modifications, and their derivation.

THERE are nine parts of Speech; Article, Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, and Conjunction.

Of the ARTICLES.

An *Article* is a word put before a noun, to show the extent of its meaning; as, *a man*.

There are two articles, *a* or *an* and *the*. *A* is used before a consonant.*—*An* is used before a vowel, or silent *h*; as, *an age, an hour*.

Of NOUNS.

A *Noun* is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *John, London, book*.

Nouns are varied, by Number, Gender, and Case.

OBSERVATIONS.

A is called the *indefinite* article, because it does not point out a particular person or thing; as, *A king*; that is, *any king*.

The is called the *definite* article, because it refers to a particular person or thing; as, *The king*; that is, the king of our own country.

A noun, without an article to limit it, is taken in its widest sense; *Man* is mortal; namely, *all mankind*.

A is used before nouns in the *singular* number only.—It is used before the plural in nouns preceded by such phrases as, *A few*; *a great many*; as, *a few books*; *a great many apples*.

The is used before nouns in both numbers: and sometimes before adverbs in the comparative and superlative degree; as, *the more I study grammar the better I like it*.

* *A* is used before the long sound of *s*, and before *w* and *y*; as, *A unit, a euphony, a case, a week, a year, such a one*.—*An* is used before words beginning with *h* sounded, when the accent is on the second syllable: as, *An heroic action; an historical account*.

Of NUMBER.

Number is the distinction of *one* from *more*.

Nouns have *two* numbers: the *Singular* and the *Plural*. The singular denotes *one*, and the plural *more* than one.

1. The plural is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular; as, *Book, books*.

2. Nouns in *s, sh, ch, x, or o*, form the plural by adding *es*; as, *Miss, Misses*; *brush, brushes*; *match, matches*; *fox, foxes*; *hero, heroes*.—p. 10, b.*

3. Nouns in *y* change *y* into *ies* in the plural; as, *Lady, ladies*:—*y*, with a vowel before it, is not changed into *ies*; as, *Day, days*.

4. Nouns in *f*, or *fe*, change *f*, or *fe*, into *ves* in the plural; as, *Loaf, loaves*; *life, lives*.

OBSERVATIONS.

Nouns ending in *ch*, sounding *k*, form the plural by adding *s* only; as, *Stomach, stomachs*.

Nouns in *io*, with *juncto, canto, tyro, grotto, portico, solo, and quarto*, have *s* only in the plural; as, *Folio, folios*; *canto, cantos*.

Nouns in *ff* have their plural in *s*; as, *Muff, muffs*; except *staff*, which sometimes has *staves*.

Dwarf, scarf, wharf; brief, chief, grief, kerchief, handkerchief, mischief; gulf, turf, surf; life, strife; proof, hoof, roof, and reproof, never change *f* or *fe*, into *ves*—*ie* change *f* or *fe*, into *ves*, 27 don't.—K. p. 22, b.

Nouns are either *proper* or *common*.—*Proper* nouns are the names of persons, places, seas, and rivers, &c.; as, *Thomas, Scotland, Fifth*.

Common nouns are the names of things in general; as, *Chair, table*.

Collective nouns are nouns that signify *many*; as, *Multitude, crowd*.

Abstract nouns are the names of *qualities* abstracted from their substances; as, *Wisdom, wickedness*.

Verbal or *participial* nouns are nouns derived from verbs; as, *Reading*.

* Proper nouns have the plural only when they refer to a *race or family*: as, *The Campbells*; or to *several persons of the same name*; as, *The eight Henrys*; the two *Mr. Bells*; the two *Miss Browns*; (or without the numeral) the *Miss Bells*; but, in addressing letters in which *both* or *all* are equally concerned, and also when the names are *different*, we pluralize the *title* (*Mr. or Miss*) and write *Misses Brown; Messrs. (for Messieurs, Fr.) Guthrie and Talk*.

EXERCISES ON NUMBER.

Write,—or tell,—or spell, the Plural of

Fox, * book, leaf, candle, hat, loaf, wine, fish, sex, kiss, coach, inch, sky, bounty, army, duty, knife, echo, loss, cargo, wife, story, church, table, glass, study, calf, branch, street, potato, peach, sheaf, booby, rock, stone, house, glory hope, flower, city, difficulty, distress.

Day, boy, relay, chimney, † journey, valley, needle, enemy, an army, a vale, an ant, a sheep, the hill, a valley, the sea, key, toy.

Correct the following errors.

A end, a army, ad heart, a horn, ad bed, a hour, a adder, a honour, an horse, an house, ad pen, a box, vallay, chiminea, journa, attorney, a eel, a ant, a inch, a eye.

Exercises on the Observations.

Monarch, tyro, grotto, nuncio, punctilio, ruff, muff, reproof, portico, handkerchief, gulf, hoof, life, multitude, people, meeting, John, Lucy, meekness, charity, folly, France, Matthew, James, wisdom, reading.

* What is the plural of *fox*? *foxes*. Why? Because nouns in *s*, *z*, *ch*, *x*, or *g*, form the plural by adding *s*.—What is the plural of *book*? *books*. Why? Because the plural is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular.—What is the plural of *leaf*? *leaves*. Why? Because nouns in *f* or *fe*, change *f* or *fe* into *ves* in the plural.—What is the plural of *army*? *armies*. Why? Because nouns in *y* change *y* into *ies* in the plural.—What is the plural of *day*? *days*. Spell it: *d, a, y, s*. Why not *s, a, t, e, s*? Because *y* with a vowel before it is not changed into *ies*.—It takes *s* only.—What is the difference between *adding* and *changing*?—K. No. 37, 40, 41.

† Many eminent authors change *ay* in the singular into *ies* in the plural, thus: *Diogenes* with scorn rejecting smoke. *Shoys*.

Still as thou dost thy radiant *solitaires* run. *Prior*.

But rattling nonsense in full colleges breaks. *Rover*.

The society of Procurators or *Attorneys*. *Attorneys*.

This mode of spelling these and similar words is highly improper.

Of NOUNS.

Some Nouns are irregular in the formation of their plural.
such as,

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Man*	men	Tooth	teeth
Woman	women	Goose	geese
Child	children	Moose	mice
Foot	feet	Mouse	lice
Ox	oxen	Penny	pence

Singular.	Plural.
Brother	brothers, or brethrent
Sow or swine†	sows, or swine
Die (for gaming)	dice
Die (for coining)	dies
Aide-de-camp	aides-de-camp
Court-martial	courts-martial
Cousin-german	cousins-german
Father-in-law; &c.	fathers-in-law, &c.

OBSERVATIONS.

Names of metals, virtues, vices, and things that are weighed or measured, &c., are in general singular, as Gold, meekness, drunkenness, bread, deer, beef, &c., except when the different sorts are meant, as Wines, tons.

Some nouns are used only in the plural; such as *Antipodes, Literati, credenda, minutia, banditti, data, folk.*

The singular of *literati*, &c., is made by saying one of the *literati*. *Banditti*, the singular of *banditti*, is often used in newspapers.

The words *apparatus,actus, series, braces, down, means*, and *opacis*, are alike in both numbers. Some pluralia serice into serices. *Braces, species*, &c., sometimes admit of the plural form; thus, He bought partridges in *braces*, and books in *dozens*, &c.

News and *aims* are generally used in the singular number, but sometimes in the plural. *Fetus* is generally plural.

Pease and *fish* are used when we mean the species; as *Pease* are dear, *fish* is cheap; but when we refer to the number, we say, *Peas, fishes*; as, Ten *peas*, two *fishes*.

Horns and *feet*, meaning cavalry and infantry, are used in the singular form with a plural verb; as, A thousand *horns* were ready; ten thousand *feet* were there. *Men* is understood.

* The compounds of man form the plural like the simple; namely, by changing a of the singular into e of the plural.—*Archersmen*, not being a compound of *man*, is *musketmen*, it is said, in the plural; I think it should always be *musketmen* in the plural.

† The word *brothers* is generally applied to the members of the same society or church, and *brethren* to the sons of the same parents.

‡ The singular of some nouns is distinguished from the plural by the article *a*; as, *A sheep, a swine*.

Of NOUNS.

As the following words, from Foreign Languages, seldom occur, except a few, the pupil may very properly be allowed to omit them, till he be further advanced.

Animācūlum	animācula	Fōcus	fōci
Antithesis	antitheses	Gēnius	gēniſſ
Apex	apices	Gēnus	gēnera
Appendix	{ appendixes appendices	Hypōthesis	hypōtheses
Arcānum	arcāna	Ignis fātus	ignes fātui
Autōmaton	autōmata	Index	indexes, indices†
Axis*	axes	Lāmina	lāminae
Bāsis	bāses	Māgus	māgi
Calx	calces	Memoran- dum	{ memoranda, or memorandums
Cherub, cherubim, cherubs		Mētāmōr- phosis	{ mētāmōrpho- ses
Crisis	crises	Monsieur	messieurs
Critērium	critēria	Phenōmenon	phenōmena
Dātum	dāta	Rādus	rādii
Desiderātum	desiderāta	Stāmen	stāmina
Diāresis	diāreses	Sērāph	sērāphim, sērāphs
Efflūvium	efflūvia	Stimulus	stimuli
Ellipsis	ellipses	Stratum	strata
Emphasis	emphases	Vertex	vērtices
Encōmium	{ encōmia encōmiums	Vortex	vōrtices
Errātum	errāta	Virtuōso	virtuōsi

It was thought unnecessary to give a list of such words of our own—as, *Snuffers, scissors, tons, &c.*—because they are evidently to be used as plural; but it may be proper to observe, that such words as *Mathematics, metaphysics, politics, ethics, pneumatics, &c.*, though generally plural, are sometimes construed as singular, as, *Mathematics is a science; and so of the rest.*

* *Rule.* Nouns in *us* or *es* have *s* in the plural; and those which have *is* in the singular have *es* in the plural.

† *Genii, aerial spirits; but geniuses, persons of genius.* For what reason *L. Murray, Epistemon, Oulton*, and others, pluralise such words as *genius* and *rebus*, by adding *ses* to the singular, making them *geniuses, rebuses*, instead of *geniuses, rebuses*, it is not easy to guess. As words ending with a single *s* are never accented on the last syllable, there can be no good reason for doubling the *s* before *es*. Hence rule 24, page 7th, begins with "Nouns in *s*," because those in *s* include those in *es*.

‡ *Indices*, when it signifies pointers, or table of contents. *Indices*, when it refers to algebraic quantities.

Of GENDER.

Gender is the distinction of sex.

There are three genders; the *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

The Masculine denotes the *male* sex; *A man, a boy.*

The Feminine denotes the *female* sex; *A woman, a girl.*

The Neuter denotes whatever is *neither male nor female*; as, *Milk.*



There are three ways of distinguishing the sex

1. By different words; as,

	Male.	Female.	Male.	Female.
Bachelor	maid, spinster	Horse	cheval	mare
Beau	belle	Husband	marriage	wife
Boar	sow	King	roi	queen
Boy	girl	Lad		lass
Brother	sister	Lord	lord	lady
Buck	doe	Man	homme	woman
Bull	cow	Master	maître	mistress
Bullock	heifer	Milster		spawner
Ox, or steer	hen	Nephew		niece
Cock	chicken	Ram		ewe
Colt	filly	Singer	chanter	songstress
Dog	bitch			or singer
Drake	duck	Sloven		slut
Earl	countess	Son	fils	daughter
Father	mother	Stag		hind
Friar	nun	Uncle	oncle	aunt
Gander	goose	Wizard	sorcier	witch
Hart	roe	Sir	monsieur	madam

OBSERVATIONS.

Some nouns are either *masculine* or *feminine*; such as *parent, child, cousin, infant, servant, neighbour, &c.*

Some nouns, naturally *neuter*, are converted into the *masculine* or *feminine* gender; as, when we say of the Sun, *He is setting*; and of the Moon, *She is eclipsed*. This, however, is a figurative use of words.

languages, seldom
erly be allowed

foci
gēnif
gēnera
ypōthēses
gnes fātuf
xes, indices
āminae

āgi
memoranda, or
memorandums
āmāmōpho-
ses
essieurs
menōmena

dil
amina
nim, sērāphs
null
ata
ices
tices
uōsi

such words
cause they
be proper
metaphysics,
lly plural,
matics is a

those which
For what
such words
king them
ty to guess
of syllable,
Hence rule
s include

Indices

Of Nouns.

2. By a difference of termination; as,

Male.	Female.	Male.	Female.
Abbot	abbess	Jew	Jewess
Actor	actress	Landgrave	landgravine
Administrator	administratrix	Lion	lioness
Adult	adulteress	Marquis	marchioness
Arbitrator	arbitress	Mayor	mayoress
Author (often)	authoress*	Patron	patroness
Baron	baroness	Peer	peeress
Bridegroom	bride	Poet	poetess
Butcher	handmaiden	Priest	priestess
Caterer	cateress	Prince	princess
Chantor	chantress	Prior	prioress
Conductor	conductress	Prophet	prophetess
Count	countess	Protector	protectress
Deacon	deaconess	Shepherd	shepherdess
Duke	duchess	Songster	songstress
Elect	electress	Sorcerer	soercess
Emperor	empress	Sultan	sultanness, or sultana
Enchanter	enchantress	Tiger	tigress
Executer	executrice	Traitor	traitress
Governor	governess	Tutor	tutress
Heir	heiress	Tyrant	tyranness
Hero	hēr-o-lne	Vilcount	vilcountess
Hunter	huntress	Votary	votress
Host	hostess	Widower	widow

3. By prefixing another word: as,

A cock-sparrow; a hen-sparrow; a ho-goat; a she-goat;
 man-servant; a maid-servant; a ho-ass; a she-ass; a
 male-child, &c.; male-descendants, &c.

* It does not appear to be necessary, nor even proper, to use an
 honorific for the female noun or pronoun that almost invariably ac-
 companies this word will distinguish the gender in it as well as in
 words.

Of the CASES of Nouns.

Case is the relation one noun bears to another, or to a verb, or preposition.

Nouns have three cases; the *Nominative*, *Possessive*, and *Objective*.*

The Nominative and Objective are alike.

The Possessive is formed by adding an *apostrophē* and *s* to the Nominative; as, *Job's*.

When the plural ends in *s*, the possessive is formed by adding only an *apostrophe*: thus,—

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> Lady	Ladies	John	—†
<i>Poss.</i> Lady's	Ladies'	John's	—
<i>Obj.</i> Lady	Ladies	John	—

Exercises on Gender, Number, and Case.

† Father, brothers, mother's, boys, book, loaf, arms, wife, hats, sisters', bride's, bottles, brush, goose, eagles' wings, echo, ox's horn, mouse, kings, queens, bread, child's, glass, tooth, tongs, candle, chair, Jane's boots, Robert's shoe, horse.

* The *Nominative* merely denotes the *name* of a thing. The *Possessive* denotes *possession*; as, *Arn's* book.—*Possession* is often expressed by *of* as well as by an *'s*.—K. 57 to 68, also 194 and 196.

The *Objective* denotes the *object* upon which an active verb or a preposition terminates.

† Proper names generally want the plural.—See p. 74, last note.

One method of using the above exercises is as follows:—

Father, a noun, *singular*, *number*, *masculine* (*gender*), the *nominative* (*case*), plural, *brothers*. Brothers, a noun, *plural*, *masculine*, the *nominative*. Mother's, a noun, *singular*, *feminine*, the *possessive*.—Spell it.—K. 44.

By parsing in this manner, the pupil gives a correct answer to the questions: What part of speech is *father*? What *number*? What *gender*? What *case*? without obliging the teacher to lose time to no purpose in asking them.—The pupil, however, should be made to understand that he is giving answers to questions which are always supposed to be asked.

As the *Nominative* and *Objective* are alike, no inaccuracy can result from the pupil's being always allowed to call it the *nominative*, till he comes to the verb.—*Case* may be altogether omitted till that time, the cases of pronouns excepted.—See *Notes*, p. 30.

Of ADJECTIVES.

A *Adjective* is a word which expresses the *quality* of a noun; as, a *good* boy.

Adjectives have *three* degrees of comparison; the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The comparative is formed by adding *er* to the positive; and the superlative by adding *est*; as, *Sweet, sweeter, sweetest*. *—K. 61.

Dissyllables in *y* change *y* into *i* before *er* and *est*; as, *Happy, happier, happiest*. †

ADJECTIVES COMPARED IRREGULARLY.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Good (well in <i>adv.</i>)	better	best
Bad, evil, or I.	worse	worst
Little	less	least
Much or many	more	most
Late	later	latest or last
Near	nearer	nearest or next
Far	farther	farthest
Fore	former	foremost or first
Old	older or elder	oldest or eldest

OBSERVATIONS.

Adjectives of *one* syllable are generally compared by adding *er* and *est*; and those of *more* than one, by prefixing *more* and *most*; as, *fore* numerous, *most* numerous; *far*, by *less* and *least*; *few*, *Less* merry, *least* merry.

Dissyllables ending with *l* final are often compared by *er* and *est*; as, *Polite, politer, politest*; *Ample, ampler, amplest*.

Some Adjectives are compared by adding *most* to the end of the word; as, *Upper, uppermost*.—Some have no positive; as, *Electric, extreme*.

Nouns are often used as *Adjectives*; as, A *gold*-ring, a *silver*-cup. Adjectives often become Nouns; as, *Much* good.

Some Adjectives do not properly admit of comparison, such as, *True, perfect, universal, chief, extreme, &c.*

Much is applied to things *weighed* or *measured*: *Many* to those that are *numbered*.—*Elder* and *eldest* to persons; *older* and *oldest* to things.

When the positive ends in a single consonant, preceded by a single vowel, the consonant is doubled before *er* and *est*; as, *Big, bigger, biggest*.

* The *Positive* expresses the *simple* quality; the *Comparative* a higher or lower degree of the quality; and the *Superlative* the highest or lowest degree.—K. 68, 72.

† If a vowel precedes *y*, it is not changed into *i* before *er* or *est*; as, *gay, gayly, gayest*; *thy, thier, thiest*.

Of PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

A *Pronoun* is a word used instead of a noun; as, *John* is a good boy; *he* obeys the master.

There are three kinds of pronouns; Personal, Relative and Adjective.—The Personal Pronouns are thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
Nom.	Poss.	Obj.	Nom.	Poss.	Obj.
First Personal Pronoun <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i>	I	mine	We	ours	us
2. <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i>	Thou	thine	You*	yours	you
3. <i>m.</i>	He	his	} They	theirs	then
3. <i>f.</i>	She	hers†			
3. <i>n.</i>	It	its			

Exercises on Personal Pronouns.

I, thou, we, me, us, thine, he, him, she, hers, they, thee, them, its, their, a, you, her, yours, yours, mine, his, I, me, them, us, it, we.

* *Ye* is often used instead of *you* in the nominative; as, *Ye* are happy.

Thine and *thine* were formerly used instead of *my* and *thy* before a vowel or an *h*; as, Blot out all *mine* iniquities; Give me *thine* bread.

† *Hers*, *its*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, should never be written, *her's*, *it's*, *our's*, *your's*, *their's*; but *hers*, *its*, *ours*, &c.

The compound personal pronouns, *Myself*, *thyself*, *himself*, &c., are commonly joined either to the simple pronoun, or to *'s*, ordinary noun to make it more remarkable.—See K. 80, 96.

These pronouns are all generally in the same case with the noun or pronoun to which they are joined; as, "She herself said so;" "They themselves acknowledged it to me myself;" "The master himself got it." *Self*, when used alone, is a noun; as, "Our fondness *self* is hurtful to others."—K. 96.

In some respectable Grammars the possessive case of the different personal pronouns stands thus: *let, my or mine, our or ours—2d, thy or thine, your or yours—3d, her or hers, their or theirs*. I see no impropriety in this method; the one I have preferred, however, is perhaps less liable to objection.

Of RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

A *Relative Pronoun* is a word that relates to a noun or pronoun before it, called the antecedent; as, The master who taught us, &c.*

The simple relatives are *who*, *which*, and *that*; they are alike in both numbers, thus:

Nom. Who.

Poss. Whose.

Obj. Whom.

Who is applied to persons; as, The boy *who*.†

Which is applied to inferior animals, and things without life; as, The dog *which* barks; the book *which* was lost.

That is often used instead of *who* or *which*; as, The boy *that* reads; the book *that* was lost.

What is a compound relative, including both the relative and the antecedent;† as, This is *what* I wanted; that is, *the thing which* I wanted.

OBSERVATIONS.

In asking questions, *Who*, *which*, and *what*, are called *Interrogatives*; as, *Who* said that? *What* did he do?—K. p. 84, Note.

The relative is always of the same gender, number, and person, with the antecedent, but not always in the same case.—K. p. 43, † 6.

Which has properly no possessive case of its own. The objective, with *of* before it, supplies its place. Our best writers, however, now use *whose* as the possessive of *which*; as, "A religion *whose* origin is divine." BLAIR. See more remarks on *Which*, at p. 151.—For the relative *as*, see p. 140.

Whoever, *whosoever*, and *whomever*, are compound relatives equal to *He who*; as, *The person that*.—K. 83.

Whatever, and *whatsoever*, with *whichever* and *whichever*, are sometimes adjectives, and combine with nouns, and sometimes com-

* The relative sometimes refer to a whole clause as its antecedent; as, The bill was rejected by the Lords, *which* excited no small degree of jealousy and discontent; that is, *which thing or circumstances*, &c. see, &c.

† *Who* is applied to inferior animals, when they are represented as speaking and acting like rational beings.—K. p. 43, † 4.

‡ *What* and *which* are sometimes used as adjectives; as, "I know not by what equality the Adversaries of the motion are impelled?" *which things* &c. or allegory. *What* here is equal to *these*.—P. 57, A.

ord that relates
called the an-
aught us, &c.*
ho, which, and
mbers, thus:

as, The boy
animals, and
which barks;

who or which;
that was lost.
ve, including
cedent; † as,
is, the thing

alled Interrogatives;
r, and persons, with
p. 43, † 5.
n. The objective,
ars, however, now
on whose origin is
p. 151.—For the
atives equal to *He*
whichsoever, are
sometimes com-

as its antecedent;
d no small degree
circumstances, as
represented as
as: as, "I know
are impelled"
ness.—P. 57, A.

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

There are four sorts of Adjective Pronouns.

1. The Possessive Pronouns, *My, thy, his,* her, our, your, their, its, own.*†
2. The Distributive, *Each, every, either, neither.*
3. The Demonstrative, *This, that, †* with their plurals, *these, those.*‡
4. The Indefinite, *None, any, all, such, whole, some, both, one, other, another:* the last three are declined like nouns.

OBSERVATIONS.

pound relatives, equal to *that which*. These compounds, however, particularly *whose*, are now generally avoided. *Whatever* and *wherever* are most used.

That is a *Relative* when it can be turned into *who* or *which*, without destroying the sense; as, "The days *that* (or *which*) are past are gone for ever."

That is a *Demonstrative* pronoun when it is placed immediately before a noun, expressed or understood; as, "*That* book is new." "*That* is not the one I want."

That is a *Conjunction* when it cannot be turned into *who* or *which*; but marks a consequence, an indication, or final end; as, "He was so proud *that* he was universally despised." He answered, "*That* he never was so happy as he is now." Live well, *that* you may die well.

All the *indefinite* pronouns, (except *none*;) and even the *demonstrative, distributive, and possessive*, are *adjectives* belonging to nouns either expressed or understood; and in parsing I think they ought to be called *adjectives*.—*None* is used in both numbers; but it cannot be joined to a noun.

The phrase *none other* should be *no other*.—*Another* has no plural.

* *His* and *her* are possessive pronouns when placed immediately before nouns; but when they stand by themselves, *his* is accounted the possessive case of the personal pronoun *he*, and *her* the objective of *she*.

† *His* and *own* seem to be as much entitled to the appellation of possessive pronouns as *his* and *my*.

‡ *You*, with *former* and *latter*, may be called demonstrative pronouns, as well as *this* and *that*. See Syntax, R. 26, b.

§ *That* is sometimes a *Relative*, sometimes a *Demonstrative* pronoun, and sometimes a *Conjunction*.—K.

ENGLISH ETYMOLOGY.

Promiscuous exercises on NOUNS, &c.

A man, he, who, which, that, his, me, mine, thine, whose, they, hers, it, we, us, I, him, its, horse, mare, master, thou, theirs, thee, you, my, thy, our, your, their, his, her—this, these, that, those—each, every, either, any, none, bride, daughter, uncle, wife's, sir, girl, madam, box, dog, lad, a gay lady; sweet apples; strong bulls; fat oxen; a mountainous country.

Compare, Rich, merry, furious, covetous, large, little, good, bad, near, wretched, rigorous, delightful, sprightly, spacious, splendid, gay, imprudent; pretty.

The human mind; cold water; he, thou, she, it; woody mountains; the naked rock; youthful jollity; goodness divine; justice severe; his, thy, others, one, a peevish boy; hers, their strokes; pretty girls; his droning flight; her delicate cheeks; a man who; the sun that; a bird which; its pebbled bed; fiery darts; a numerous army; flove unbounded; a nobler victory; gentler gales; nature's eldest birth; earth's lowest room; the winds triumphant; some flowery stream; the tempestuous billows; these things; those books; that breast which; one rich man's insolence; your queen; all who; a boy's drum: himself, themselves, myself.

* The personal pronouns, *Himself, herself, themselves, &c.* are used in the *nominative* case as well as in the *objective*; as, *Himself* shall come.

Mr. Blair, in his Grammar, says, they have only one case, viz. the *nominative*; but this is a mistake, for they have the *objective* too.—K. 80.

Of VERBS.

A Verb is a word that affirms something of its nominative; or

A Verb is a word which expresses *being, doing, or suffering*; as, I *am*,—I *love*,—I *am loved*.

Verbs are of three kinds, *Active, Passive, and Neuter*.

A verb *Active* expresses action passing from an actor to an object; as, James *strikes* the table.*

A verb *Passive* expresses the suffering of an action, or the *enduring* of what another does; as, The table *is struck*.

A verb *Neuter* expresses *being*; or a state of being, or action confined to the actor; as, I *am*, he *sleeps*, you *run*.†

AUXILIARY VERBS.

The auxiliary or helping verbs, by which verbs are chiefly inflected, are defective, having only the Present and Past Indicative; thus.

Pres. Do, have, shall, will, may, can, am, must
Past. Did, had, should, would, might, could, was, must.

And the Participles (of *be*) *being, been*. *Be, do, have, and will*, are often principal verbs.‡

Let is an active verb, and *ought* is a defective verb, having only the Present and Past Indicative.—P. 47, mid.

* Active verbs are called *transitive* verbs, because the action passes from the actor to the object.—K. p. 68, Note.

† *Neuter* verbs are called *intransitive*, because their action is confined to the actor, and does not pass over to an object.—*Children should not be troubled too soon with the distinction between active and neuter verbs.*

‡ It was thought quite unnecessary to conjugate the verbs *Be* and *do*, &c. through all their moods and tenses; because a child that can readily conjugate the verb *to love*, can easily conjugate any other verb.

A verb is declined by Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.

Of the MOODS of VERBS.

Verbs have *five* moods; namely, the Indicative, Potential, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive.

The *Indicative* mood simply declares a thing; as, *He loves*; he is *loved*; or it asks a question; as, *Lovest* thou me?

The *Potential* mood implies possibility, liberty, power, will, or obligation; as, The wind *may* blow; we *may* walk or ride; I *can* swim; he *would* not stay; you *should* obey your parents.

The *Subjunctive* mood represents a thing under a condition, supposition, motive, wish, &c., and is preceded by a conjunction expressed or understood, and followed by another verb; as, If thy presence *go* not with us, *carry* us not up hence.

The *Imperative* mood commands, exhorts, entreats, or permits; as, *Do* this; *Remember* thy Creator; *hear*, O my people; *go* thy way.

The *Infinitive* mood expresses a thing in a general manner, without distinction of number or person, and commonly has *to* before it as *To Love*.

Explanations of the moods and tenses of verbs are inserted here for the sake of order; but it would be highly improper to detain the learner so long as to commit them to memory. He ought, therefore, after getting the definition of a verb, to proceed to the inflection of it without delay; and when he comes to the exercises on the verbs, he can look back to the definition of a verb active, &c., as occasion may require.

Of TENSES, or DISTINCTIONS of TIME.

The *Present tense* expresses what is going on just now; as, I *love* you; I *strike* the table.

The *Past tense* represents the action or event either as passed and finished; as, He *broke* the bottle and *spilt* the brandy; or it represents the action as unfinished at a certain time past; as, My father *was coming* home when I met him.

The *Perfect tense* implies that an action has just now, or lately, been quite finished; as, John *has cut* his finger; I *have sold* my horse.

The *Pluperfect tense* represents a thing as *past*, before another event happened; as, All the judges *had taken* their places before Sir Roger came.

The *Future* represents the action as yet to come; as, I *will see* you again, and your heart *shall rejoice*.*

The *Future perfect* intimates that the action will be fully accomplished, at, or before the time of another future action or event as, I *shall have got* my lesson before ten o'clock to-morrow.

* Mr. Walker and others have divided the first future into the *future foretelling*, and the *future promising or commanding*. That this distinction is absolutely necessary, as Mr. Walker affirms, is exceedingly questionable; for when a learner has occasion to use the future tense, this division will not in the least assist him in determining whether he ought to use *will* rather than *shall*, &c.—Therefore this division serves no useful purpose.

REMARKS ON SOME OF THE TENSES.

ON THE PRESENT.

1. The *Present Tense* is used to express a *habit* or *custom*, as, He *sings*; She *goes* to church. It is sometimes applied to persons long since dead, when the narration of their actions excites our passions; as, "Nero *is* abhorred for his cruelty." "Milton *is* admired for his sublimity."
2. In historical narration, it is beautifully used for the *Past Tense*; as, "Cæsar *leaves* Gaul, *crosses* the Rubicon, and *enters* Italy with five thousand men." It is sometimes used with fine effect for the *Perfect*; as, "In the book of Genesis, Moses *tells* us who were the descendants of Abraham,"—for *has told* us.
3. When preceded by such words as *when*, *before*, *as soon as*, *after*, it expresses the relative time of a *future* action; as, When he *comes*, he will be welcome. As soon as the post *arrives*, the letters will be delivered.
4. In the *continue*, *progressive*, or *compound form*, it expresses an action *begun* and *going on just now*, but not complete; as, I *am studying* my lesson; he *is writing* a letter.

ON THE PAST.

The *Past Tense* is used when the action or state is *limited* by the *circumstance of time or place*: as, "We *saw* him *yesterday*." "We *were* in bed *when he arrived*." Here the words *yesterday* and *when* limit the action and state to a particular time.—After *death* all agents are spoken of, in the *Past Tense*, because time is limited and defined by the *life of the person*; as, "Mary Queen of Scots *was* remarkable for her beauty."

This tense is peculiarly appropriated to the *narrative style*, because all narration implies some *circumstance*; as, "Socrates *refused* to adore false gods." Here the period of Socrates' life being a limited part of past time, circumscribes the narration.—It is improper then to say of one already dead, "He *has been* much admired; he *has done* much good;" but "He *was* much admired; he *did* much good."

Although the *Past Tense* is used when the action is *circumstantially* expressed by a word or sentiment that limits the time of the action to some definite portion of past time, yet such words as *often*, *sometimes*, *many a time*, *frequently*, and similar vague intimations of time, except in *narrations*, require the *perfect*, because they admit a certain latitude, and do not limit the action to any *definite* portion of past time: thus, "How *often* have we seen the proud despised."

as a habit or custom, sometimes applied in narration of their doings is abhorred for his sublimity."

is justly used for the purpose of crossing the Rubicon, "It is sometimes said, "In the book of the descendants of Abrah-

am, when, before, as the time of a future event. As soon as it is over.

compound form, it is just now, but not now, is writing a letter.

on or state is likewise: as, "We saw the ark arrived." Here the action and state to be spoken of in the text are defined by the words which were remarkable.

the narrative style, as, "Socrates, after a long period of his life, is already dead, and has done much good;" but not, "I."

the action is circumscribed by the element that limits it to a portion of past time, frequently, but not in narrations, within a certain latitude, a portion of past time, and not despised.

ON THE PERFECT.

The *Perfect Tense* chiefly denotes the accomplishment of mere facts without any necessary relation to time or place, or any other circumstance of their existence; as, Philosophers have endeavoured to investigate the origin of evil. In general, however, it denotes:

1. An action newly finished; as, I have heard great news. The post has arrived, but has brought no letters for you.

2. An action done in a definite space of time (such as a day, a week, a year,) a part of which has yet to elapse; as, I have spent this day well.

3. An action perfected some time ago, but whose consequences extend to the present time; as, We have neglected our duty, and are therefore unhappy.

Duration, or existence, requires the perfect; as, He has been dead four days. We say, Cicero has written orations, because the orations are still in existence; but we cannot say, Cicero has written poems, because the poems do not exist; they are lost; therefore we must say, Cicero wrote poems.

The following are a few instances in which this tense is improperly used for the past:

"I have somewhere met with the epitaph of a charitable man, which has very much pleased me." Spect. No. 177. The latter part of this sentence is rather narrative than assertive; and therefore it should be, "which very much pleased me;" that is, when I read it.—"When that the poor hath cried, Cæsar hath wept." Shakesp. The style is here narrative; Cæsar was dead; it should therefore be, "When the poor cried, Cæsar wept."—"Though in old age the circle of our pleasures is more contracted than it has formerly been, yet," &c. Blair, serm. 12. It should be, "than it formerly was;" because in old age, the former stages of life, contrasted with the present, convey an idea, not of completion, but of limitation, and thus become a subject of narration rather than of assertion. "I have known him, Eugenius, when he has been going to a play or an opera divert the money which was designed for that purpose, upon an object of charity whom he has met with in the street." Spect. No. 177. It should be, "when he was going," and "whom he met with in the street;" because the actions are circumstantially related by the phrases, when going to a play and in the street.

ON THE FUTURE PERFECT.

Upon more careful reflection, it appears to me that the Second Future should have will or shall in all the persons, as in the first. Mr Murray has excluded will from the

first person, and *shall* from the *second* and *third*, because they appear to him to be incorrectly applied; and in the examples which he has adduced, they are incorrectly applied; but this is not a sufficient reason for excluding them altogether from every sentence. The fault is in the writer; he has applied them wrong, a thing that is often done with *will* and *shall* in the *first* future as well as in the *second*.

If I am at liberty to use *will* in the *first* future, to intimate my resolution to perform a future action; as, "I *will* go to church, for I am resolved to go," why should I not employ *will* in the *second* future, to intimate my resolution or determination to have an action *finished* before a specified future time? Thus, "I *will* have written my letters before supper;" that is, I am *determined* to have my letters finished before supper. Were the truth of this affirmation, respecting the time of finishing the letters, called in question, the propriety of using *will* in the *first* person would be unquestionable; thus, You will not have finished your letters before supper, I am sure. Yes, *I will*. Will what? Will have finished my letters.

Shall, in like manner, may with propriety be applied to the *second* and *third* person. In the *third* person, for instance, if I say, "He *will* have paid me his bill before June," I merely foretell what he will have done; but that is not what I intended to say. I meant to convey the idea, that since I have found him so dilatory, I will *compel* him to pay it before June; and as this was my meaning, I should have employed *shall*, as in the *first* future, and said, "He *shall* have paid me his bill before June."

It is true, that we seldom use this future; we rather express the idea as nearly as we can, by the *first* future, and say, "He shall pay his bill before June;" but when we do use the *second* future, it is evident, I trust, from the examples just given, that *shall* and *will* should be applied in it, exactly as they are in the *first*.—See 1 Cor. xv. 24; Luke xvii. 10.

ON THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

The auxiliary verbs, as they are called, such as, *Do*, *shall*, *will*, *may*, *can*, and *must*, are in reality *separate* verbs, and were originally used as such, having after them, either the Past Participle, or the *Infinitive Mood*, with the *to* suppressed, for the sake of sound, as it is after *bid*, *dare*, &c. (see Syntax, Rule VI.) Thus, I *have loved*. We *may to*

and third, because applied; and in the y are incorrectly ap on for excluding them fault is in the writer; at is often done with l as in the second.

first future, to inti e action; as, "I will," why should I not imate my resolution hshed before a speci- written my letters d to have my letters of this affirmation, ers, called in ques first person would have finished your will. Will what?

riety be applied to rd person, for in- e his bill before e done; but that e convey the idea, I will compel him y my meaning, I future, and said, e."

; wo rather ex- first future, and t when we do use m the examples ed in it, exactly Luke xvii. 10.

h as, Do, shall, ate verbs, and em, either the h the to sup- bid, dare, &c. We may to

These verbs are always joined in this manner either to the *Infinitive* or participle; and although this would be a simpler way of parsing the verb than the common, yet in compliment perhaps to the Greek and Latin, grammarians in general consider the auxiliary and the following verb in the infinitive or participle as *one* verb, and parse and construe it accordingly.

Several of the auxiliaries in the Potential mood refer to *present, past, and future* time. This needs not excite surprise; for even the Present Indicative can be made to express *future* time as well as the Future itself. Thus, "He leaves town to-morrow."

Present time is expressed in the following sentence: "I wish he *could* or *would* come just now."

Past time is expressed with the similar auxiliaries; as, "It was my desire that he *should* or *would* come yesterday." "Though he *was* ill, he *might* recover."

Future:—I am anxious that he *should* or *would* come to-morrow. If he come, I *may* speak to him. If he would delay his journey a few days, I *might, could, would, or should* accompany him.

Although such examples as these are commonly adduced as proofs that these auxiliaries refer to *present, past, and future* time, yet I think it is pretty evident that *might, could, would, and should, with may and can, merely* express liberty, *ability, will, and duty, without any reference to time at all, and that the precise time is generally determined by the drift or scope of the sentence, or rather by the adverb or participle that is subjoined or understood, and not by these auxiliaries*

Must and *ought*, for instance, merely imply *necessity, and obligation, without any necessary relation to time*; for when I say, "I must do it," *must* merely denotes the *necessity* I am under, and *do* the *present* time, which might easily be made *future*, by saying, "I must do it *next week*;" here *future* time is expressed by *next week*, and not by *must*. If I say, "I must have done it;" here *must* merely expresses *necessity*, as before, and I *have done*, the *past* time. "These *ought* ye to do;" here *ought* merely denotes obligation, and *do* the *present* time. "These *ought* ye to have done;" here *ought* merely expresses *duty or obligation*, as before; but the time of its existence is denoted as *past, by to have done, and not by ought*, as Mr. Murray and many others say.

As *must* will not admit of the *objective* after it, nor is even preceded or succeeded by the sign of the *infinitive*, it has been considered an absolute auxiliary, like *may* or *can*, belonging to the Potential Mood.

Ought, on the contrary, is an independent verb, though defective, as always governs another verb in the *infinitive*.

OF WILL AND SHALL.

Will, in the first person singular and plural, intimates resolution and promising; as, I *will* not let thee go except thou bless me. We *will* go. I *will* make of thee a great nation.

Will, in the second and third person,* commonly foretells as, He *will* reward the righteous. You, (or they), *will* be very happy there.

Shall, in the first person, only foretells; as, I, or we, *shall* to-morrow. In the second and third person, *Shall* promises, commands, or threatens; as, They, or you, *shall* be rewarded. Thou *shalt* not steal. The soul that sinneth, *it shall* die.

But this must be understood of affirmative sentences only, for when the sentence is interrogative, just the reverse commonly takes place; as, *Shall* I send you a little of the pie? i. e. *will* you permit me to send it? *Will* James return to-morrow? i. e. do you expect him?

When the second and third person* are represented as the subjects of their own expressions, or their own thoughts, *SHALL* foretells, as in the first person; as, "He says, he *shall* be a loser by this bargain," "Do you suppose you *shall* go?" and *WILL* promises, as in the first person; as, "He says he *will* bring Pope's Homer to-morrow." You say you *will* certainly come.

Of *Shall*, it may be remarked, that it never expresses the *will* or resolution of its Nominative; Thus, I *shall* fall; Thou *shalt* love thy neighbour; He *shall* be rewarded; express no resolution on the part of I, thou, he.

Did *will*, on the contrary, always intimate the resolution of its Nom., the difficulty of applying *will* and *shall* would be at an end; but this cannot be said; for though *will* in the first person always expresses the resolution of its Nom., yet in the second and third person it does not always foretell, but often intimates the resolution of its Nom. as strongly as it does in the first person; thus, Ye *will* not come unto me that ye may have life. He *will* not perform the duty of my husband's brother. Deut. xxv. 7; see also verse 9. Accordingly *would*, the past time of *will*, is used in the same manner; as, and he was angry, and would not go in. Luke xv. 28.

Should and *would* are subject to the same rules as *shall* and *will*, they are generally attended with a supposition; as, Were I to run, I *should* soon be fatigued, &c.

Should is often used instead of *ought*, to express duty or obligation; as, We *should* remember the poor; We *ought* to obey God rather than men.

* See page 141, obs. 3d.

OGY.
ALL.

and plural, intimates re-
of thee go except thou
of thee a great nation.
* commonly foretells
You, or they, will b-

as, I, or we, shall
erson, Shall promises,
ou, shall be reward-
sineth, it shall die.
ative sentences only,
ust the reverse com-
a little of the pie?
James return to-

represented as the
eir own thoughts,
as, "He says, he
u suppose you shall
t person; as, "He
ow." You say you

ever expresses the
hus, I shall fall;
be rewarded; ex-
he.
ate the resolution
and shall would
though will in the
n of its Nom., yet
ways foretell, but
as strongly as it
ome unto me that
duty of my hus-
e 9. Accordingly
ame manner; as,
Luke xv. 28.

se rules as shall
a supposition;
d, &c.
express duty or
oor; We ought

ENGLISH ETYMOLOGY.

Of VERBS.

TO LOVE. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1. person	I love	1. We love
2.	Thou lovest	2. You* love
3	He loves or loveth	3. They love

PAST TENSE.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1.	I loved	1. We loved
2.	Thou lovedst	2. You loved
3.	He loved	3. They loved

PERFECT TENSE.

Its signs are, *have, hast, has, or hath.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1.	I have loved	1. We have loved
2.	Thou hast loved	2. You have loved
3.	He has or hath loved	3. They have loved

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *had, hadst.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1.	I had loved	1. We had loved
2.	Thou hadst loved	2. You had loved
3.	He had loved	3. They had loved

FUTURE TENSE.

Signs, *shall or will.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1.	I shall or will love	1. We shall or will love
2.	Thou shalt or wilt love	2. You shall or will love
3.	He shall or will love	3. They shall or will love

* *You* has always a plural verb, even when applied to a single individual.

ENGLISH ETYMOLOGY.

FUTURE PERFECT.

[See pages 23, 24.]

Singular.

1. Shall or will have loved
2. Shalt or wilt have loved
3. Shall or will have loved

Plural.

1. Shall or will have loved
2. Shall or will have loved
3. Shall or will have loved

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Signs, *may, can, or must.**Singular.*

1. May or can* love
2. Mayst or canst love
3. May or can love

Plural.

1. May or can love
2. May or can love
3. May or can love

PAST.

Signs, *might, could, would, or should.**Singular.*

1. Might, could, would, or should love
2. Mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst love
3. Might, could, would, or should love

Plural.

1. Might, could, would, or should love
2. Might, could, would, or should love
3. Might, could, would, or should love

PERFECT

Signs, *may, can, or must have.**Singular.*

1. May or can* have loved
2. Mayst or canst have loved
3. May or can have loved

Plural.

1. May or can have loved
2. May or can have loved
3. May or can have loved

* *Must*, although it belongs as properly to the *present* and *perfect* potential as *may* or *can*, has been omitted for want of room, but in going over these tenses, with the auxiliaries, one by one, it is easy to take it in thus: I *must* love, Thou *must* love, &c.—See 23 note, p. 37.

Plural.

all or will have loved
all or will have loved
all or will have loved

ust.

Plural.

or can love
or can love
or can love

r should.

Plural.

ould, would, or
d love
ould, would, or
d love
ould, would, or
l love

se.

Plural.

an have loved
an have loved
an have loved

resent and perfect
of room - but in
y one, it is easy to
2d note, p. 37.

ENGLISH ETYMOLOGY.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Signs; *might, could, would, or should have.*

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Might, could, would, or
should have loved | 1. Might, could, would, or
should have loved |
| 2. Mightst, &c., have loved | 2. Might have loved |
| 3. Might have loved | 3. Might have loved |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. If I love | 1. If we love |
| 2. If thou love | 2. If you love |
| 3. If he love | 3. If they love* |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 2. Love, or love thou, or
do thou love† | 2. Love, or love ye or you,
or do ye love |
|--|--|

INFINITIVE MOOD

Present, To love.

Perfect, To have loved.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, Loving. Past, Loved. Perfect, Having loved. †

* The remaining tenses of the subjunctive mood are, in every respect, similar to the corresponding tenses of the indicative mood, with the addition to the verb of a conjunction expressed or implied, denoting a condition, motive, wish, or supposition. — See p. 33, note 2d.

† The imperative mood is not entitled to three persons. In strict propriety, it has only the second person in both numbers. For when I say, Let me love: I mean, Permit thou me to love. Hence, let me love, is construed thus: let thou me (to) love, or do thou let me (to) love. Th, the sign of the infinitive, is not used after let. See Syntax, B. VI. No one will say that permit (me to love) is the first person singular, imperative mood: then why should let (me to love), which is exactly similar, be called the first person? The Latin verb wants the first person, and if it has the third, it has also a different termination for it, which is not the case in the English verb. — K. 118.

† See Key, No. 304-311.

Exercises on the Tenses of Verbs, and Cases of Nouns and Pronouns.

* We love him; James loves me; it amuses him; we shall conduct them; they will divide the spoil; soldiers should defend their country; friends invite friends; she can read her lesson; she may play a tune; you might please her; thou mayst ask him; he may have betrayed us; we might have diverted the children; John can deliver the message.

I love; to love; love; reprove thou; has loved; we tied the knot; if we love; if thou love; they could have commanded armies; to love; to baptize; to have loved; loved; loving; to survey; having surveyed; write a letter; read your lesson; thou hast obeyed my voice; honour thy father.

The teacher, if he chooses, may now acquaint the learner with the difference between the Nominative and the Objective.

The Nominative acts; the Objective is acted upon: as, *He eats apples.*

The Nominative commonly comes before the verb, the Objective after it.

Concerning pronouns, it may be observed, that the first speaks; the second is spoken to; and the third (or any noun) is spoken of.

* We may parse the first sentence, for example. *We love him.* We, the first personal pronoun, plural, masculine or feminine, the Nominative; love, a verb active, plural, first person, plural, present, Indicative; him, the third personal pronoun, singular, masculine, the Objective.

QUESTIONS WHICH SHOULD BE PUT TO THE PUPILS.

How do you know that *love* is plural? *Ans.* Because *we* its Nominative is plural. How do you know that *love* is the first person? *Ans.* Because *we* is the first personal pronoun, and the verb is always of the same number and person with the noun or pronoun before it.—K 102, 104.

Many of the phrases in this page may be converted into exercises of a different kind; thus the meaning of the sentence, *We love him*, may be expressed by the passive voice; as, *He is loved by us.*

It may also be turned into a question, or made a negative; as, *Do we love him?* &c. *We do not love him.*

These are a few of the ways of using the exercise on a single page; out the variety of methods that every ingenious and diligent teacher may invent and adopt to engage the attention and improve the understanding of his pupils, is vast finding out.

LOGY.

*Verbs, and Cases
Pronouns.*

es me; it smuses
; they will divide
and their country;
and read her lesson;
might please her;
y have betrayed
d the children;

prove thou; has
we love; if thou
nded armies; to
; loved; loving;
write a letter;
beyed my voice;

ut the learner with the
ctive.
son: as, *He eats apples.*
the verb, the Objective
at the first *speaks*; the
is spoken of.

mples. *We love him;*
line or *Stultitia*, the
erson, plural, present,
ngular, masculine, the

THE PUPILS
because of its Nominative
is first person? And
the verb is always
pronoun before it.—K

ted into exercises of
We love him, may be
negative: as, *De*

use on a single page,
and diligent teacher
improve the mind

ENGLISH ETYMOLOGY.

Of VERBS.

TO BE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. I am* | 1. We are |
| 2. Thou art | 2. You are |
| 3. He is | 3. They are |

PAST TENSE.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1. I was | 1. We were |
| 2. Thou wast | 2. You were |
| 3. He was | 3. They were |

PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. I have been | 1. We have been |
| 2. Thou hast been | 2. You have been |
| 3. He has been | 3. They have been |

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. I had been | 1. We had been |
| 2. Thou hadst been | 2. You had been |
| 3. He had been | 3. They had been |

FUTURE TENSE.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. I shall or will be | 1. We shall or will be |
| 2. Thou shalt or wilt be | 2. You shall or will be |
| 3. He shall or will be | 3. They shall or will be |

* Put *loving* after *am*, &c., and you make it an *Actives* verb in the progressive form.—Thus, I am *loving*, thou art *loving*, he is *loving*, &c.—P. 39.

Put *loved* after *am*, and you will make it a *Passive* verb.—See p. 39.

Of VERBS.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

Singular.

1. Shall or will have been
2. Shalt or wilt have been
3. Shall or will have been

Plural.

1. Shall or will have been
2. Shall or will have been
3. Shall or will have been

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular

1. May* or can be
2. Mayst or canst be
3. May or can be

Plural.

1. May or can be
2. May or can be
3. May or can be

Singular.

1. Might, &c., be
2. Mightst be
3. Might be

PAST

Plural.

1. Might be
2. Might be
3. Might be

PERFECT.

Singular.

1. May or can have been
2. Mayst or canst have been
3. May or can have been

Plural.

1. May or can have been
2. May or can have been
3. May or can have been

PLUPERFECT.

Singular.

1. Might have been
2. Mightst have been
3. Might have been

Plural.

1. Might have been
2. Might have been
3. Might have been

* See Note, p. 23; also Note 2d, p. 2.

Of VERBS.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

1. If I be*
2. If thou be
3. If he be

Plural.

1. If we be
2. If you be
3. If they be

PAST TENSE.

Singular.

1. If I were
2. If thou wert
3. If he were

Plural.

1. If we were
2. If you were
3. If they weret

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

1. Be, or be thou

Plural.

2. Be, or be ye or you

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. To be*Perfect.* To have been

PARTICIPLES.

*Present, Being.**Past, Been.**Perfect, Having been.*

* Be is often used in the Scriptures and some other books for the *Present Indicative*; as, We be true men, for we are.

† The remaining tenses of this mood are, in every respect, similar to the corresponding tenses of the Indicative Mood. But some say, that the Future Perfect, when used with a conjunction, has shall in all the persons: thus, If I shall have loved, If thou shalt have loved, If he shall have loved, If we, you or they shall have loved.—See p. 29, note 1st.

Though, unless, except, whether, &c., may be joined to the Subjunctive Mood as well as if.

Of VERBS.

Exercises on the Verb To BE.

Am, is, art, wast, are, I was, they were, we are, hast been, has been, we have been, hadst been, he had been, you have been, she has been, we were, they had been.

I shall be, shalt be, we will be, thou wilt be, they shall be, it will be, thou wilt have been, we have been, they will have been, we shall have been, am, it is.

I can be, mayst be, canst be, she may be, you may be, he must be, they should be, mightst be, he would be, it could be, wouldst be, you could be, he may have been, wast.

We may have been, mayst have been, they can have been, I might have been, you should have been, wouldst have been, (if) thou be, we be, he be, thou wert, we were, I be.

Be thou, be, to be, being, to have been, if I be, be ye, been, be, having been, if we be, if they be, to be.

Snow is white; he was a good man; we have been younger; she has been happy; it had been late; we are old; you will be wise; it will be time; if they be thine; be cautious; be heedful, youth;* we may be rich; they should be virtuous; thou mightst be wiser; they must have been excellent scholars; they might have been powerful.

* Youth here is properly in the Vocative case. Whenever an individual is immediately addressed, the Vocative is used in English, as well as in Greek, Latin, &c.

rb To BE.

was, they were, we
have been, hadst
ve been, she has
n.

will be, thou wilt
e, thou wilt have
ill have been, we

be, she may be,
they should be,
could be, wouldst
e been, wast.

have been, they
been, you should
en, (if) thou be,
ere, I be.

to have been, if
been, if we be,

good man; we
been happy; it
ou will be wise;
e; be cautious;
be rich; they
ghtst be wiser;
scholars; they

Whenever an infinitive is used in English, as

ENGLISH ETYMOLOGY.

Of VERBE

LOVED. PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Am loved	1. Are loved
2. Art loved	2. Are loved
3. Is loved	3. Are loved

PAST TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Was loved	1. Were loved
2. Wast loved	2. Were loved
3. Was loved	3. Were loved

PRESFOT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Have been loved	1. Have been loved
2. Hast been loved	2. Have been loved
3. Has been loved	3. Have been loved

PLUPERFOT TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Had been loved	1. Had been loved
2. Hadst been loved	2. Had been loved
3. Had been loved	3. Had been loved

FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. Shall or will be loved	1. Shall or will be loved
2. Shalt or wilt be loved	2. Shall or will be loved
3. Shall or will be loved	3. Shall or will be loved

A Passive Verb is formed by putting the Past Participle of any active Verb after the verb to be through all its moods and tenses.—

Of VERBS.

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Shall or will have been loved | 1. Shall or will have been loved |
| 2. Shalt or wilt have been loved | 2. Shall or will have been loved |
| 3. Shall or will have been loved | 3. Shall or will have been loved |

POTENTIAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. May or can be loved | 1. May or can be loved |
| 2. Mayst or canst be loved | 2. May or can be loved |
| 3. May or can be loved | 3. May or can be loved |

PAST.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Might, &c., be loved | 1. Might be loved |
| 2. Mightst be loved | 2. Might be loved |
| 3. Might be loved | 3. Might be loved |

PERFECT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. May, &c., have been loved | 1. May have been loved |
| 2. Mayst have been loved | 2. May have been loved |
| 3. May have been loved | 3. May have been loved |

PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Might, &c., have been loved | 1. Might have been loved |
| 2. Mightst have been loved | 2. Might have been loved |
| 3. Might have been loved | 3. Might have been loved |

Of VERBS.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

1. If I be loyed
2. If thou be loyed
3. If he be loyed

Plural.

1. If we be loyed
2. If you be loyed
3. If they be loyed

PAST.

Singular.

1. If I were loyed
2. If thou wert loyed
3. If he were loyed

Plural.

1. If we were loyed
2. If you were loyed
3. If they were loyed

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

2. Be thou loyed

Plural.

2. Be ye or you loyed

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. To be loyed

Perfect. To have been loyed

PARTICIPLES.

Present. Being loyed

Past. Been loyed

Perfect. Having been loyed

* The pupil may at times be requested to throw out *if*, and put *unless, though, whether, or lest* in its place.

† After the pupil is expert in going over the tenses of the verb as they are, he may be taught to omit all the auxiliaries but *one*, and go over the verb thus: *Present Potential, I may love; thou mayest love; he may love, &c.*; and then with the next auxiliary, thus: *I can love; thou canst love; he can love, &c.*; and then with *must*, thus: *I must love; thou must love; he must love, &c.*; and then with the auxiliaries of the *Past Potential* thus: *I might love; thou mightest love, &c.*

Of VERBS.

Exercises on the Verb Passive.

They are loved; we are loved; thou art loved; it is loved; she was loved; he has been loved; you have been loved; I have been loved; thou hadst been loved; we shall be loved; thou wilt be loved; they will be loved; I shall have been loved; you will have been loved.

He can be loved; thou mayst be loved; she must be loved; they might be loved; ye would be loved; they should be loved; I could be loved; thou canst have been loved; it may have been loved; you might have been loved; if I be loved; *thou wert loved; we be loved; you be loved; they be loved.—Be thou loved; be ye loved.—To be loved; loved; having been loved; to have been loved; being loved.

Promiscuous Exercises on Verbs, and Cases of Nouns and Pronouns.

Tie John's shoes; this is Jane's bonnet; ask mamma; he has learned his lessons; she invited him; your father may commend you; he was baptized; the minister baptized him; we should have delivered our message; papa will reprove us; divide the apples; the captain had commanded his soldiers to pursue the enemy; Eliza diverted her brother; a hunter killed a hare; were I loved; were we good; we should be happy. †

† A conjunction is frequently to be understood here.
* See exercises of a different sort, page 52.

Of VERBS.

rb Passive.

loved; thou art
s loved; he has
n loved; I have
n loved; we shall
ed; they will be
ed; you will have

rst be loved; she
loved; ye would
ved; I could be
loved; it may
ave been loved;
d; we be loved;
-Be thou loved;
loved; having
l; being loved.

rb, and Cases
uns.

fane's bonnet;
is lessons; she
commend you;
baptized him;
message; papa
bles; the cap
to pursue the
ner; a hunter
ore we good;

An *Active* or a *Neuter Verb* may be conjugated through all its moods and tenses, by adding its *Present Participle* to the verb *To be*. This is called the *Progressive form* because it expresses the continuation of action or state. Thus,—

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>
I am loving	I was loving
Thou art loving	Thou wast loving
He is loving, &c.	He was loving, &c.

The *Present and Past Indicatives* are also conjugated by the assistance of *do*, called the *emphatic form*: Thus,—

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>
I do love	I did love
Thou dost love	Thou didst love
He does love, &c.	He did love, &c.

RULE I.

Verbs ending in *es, sh, ch, x, or o*, form the third person singular of the *Present Indicative*, by adding *Es*: Thus,—

He dress-es, march-es, brush-es, fix-es, go-es.

RULE II.

Verbs in *y*, change *y* into *i* before the terminations *es, est, eth, and ed*; but not before *ing*; *y*, without a vowel before it, is not changed into *i*: Thus,—

Pres Try, triest, tries, or trieth. Past. Tried. Part. Trying.
Pres. Pray, prayest, prays, or prayeth. Past. Prayed.
Part. Praying.

RULE III.

Verbs accented on the last syllable, and verbs of one syllable, ending in a single consonant, preceded by a single vowel, double the final consonant before the terminations *est, eth, and ing*; but never before *s*. Thus,—

Allot, allottest, allots, allotteth, allotted, allotting.
Blot, blettest, blots, blotteth, blotted, blotting.

OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

A *regular* verb is one that forms its *past tense* and *past participle* by adding *d* or *ed* to the present: as, *Love, loved, loved.*

An *irregular* verb is one that does not form both its *past tense* and *past participle* by adding *d* or *ed* to the present; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Abid	abode	abode
Am	was	been
Arise	arose	arisen
Awake	awoke R*	awaked
Bear, to bring forth	bore, † bare	börn
Bear, to carry	bore, bare	börne
Beat	beat	beaten, or beat
Begin	began	begun
Bend	bent R	bent R
Bereave	bereft R	bereft R †
Beseech	besought	besought
Bid, for	bad, bade	bidden
Bind, un-	bound	bound
Bite	bit	bitten, hit
Bleed	bled	bled
Blow	blew	blown
Break	broke	broken
Breed	bred	bred

* Those verbs which are conjugated regularly, as well as irregularly, are marked with an R.

† Bore is now more used than bare.

VERBS.

hat forms its *past*
adding *d* or *ed* to
loved.

hat does not form
participle by add-
s,

Past Participle.

abode
been
arisen
awaked
börn
börne
beaten, or beat
begun
bent R
bereft R †
besought
bidden
bound
bitten, hit
bled
blown
broken
red

well as irregularly

22.

Of IRREGULAR VERBS.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Bring	brought	brought
Build, <i>re-</i>	built*	built
Burst	burst	burst
Buy	bought	bought
Cast	cast	cast
Catch	caught R	caught R
Chide	chid	chidden, or
Choose	chose	chosen [chid
Cleave, <i>to adhere</i>	clave R	cleaved
Cleave, <i>to split</i>	clove, or	cloven, or cleft
Cling	clung [cleft	clung
Clothe	clothed	clad R
Come, <i>be-</i>	came	come
Cost	cost	cost
Crow	crew R	crowed
Creep	crept	crept
Cut	cut	cut
Dare, <i>to venture</i>	durst	dared
Dare, <i>to challenge is</i> R	dared	dared
Dēal	dēalt R	dēalt R
Dig	dug, or dig-	dug, or digged
Do, <i>mis un-†</i>	did [ged	done
Draw, <i>with-</i>	drew	drawn
Drink	drank	drunk

* *Build, dwell, and several other verbs, have the regular form builded, dwellled, &c. - See K. 125.*

† The compound verbs are conjugated like the simple, by prefixing the syllables appended to them: thus, *Undid, undid, undone.*

Of IRREGULAR VERBS.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Drive	drove	driven
Dwell	dwelt	dwelt R.—p. 41, p
Eat	ate*	ëaten*
Fall, be-	fell	fallen
Feed	fed	fed
Feel	felt	felt
Fight	fought	fought
Find	found	found
Flee	fled	fled
Fling	flung	flung
Fly	flew	flown
Forbear	forbore	forbörne
Forget	forgot	forgotten, forgot
Forsake	forsook	forsaken
Freeze	froze	frozen
Get, be-for	got†	got, gotten†
Gild	gilt R	gilt R
Gird, be-en	girt R	girt R
Give, for-mis	gave	given
Go	went	gone
Grave, en-	graved	graven
Grind	ground	ground
Grow	grew	grown

* I have excluded eat as the Past and Past Participle of this verb, for though sometimes used by Milton and a few others, the use of it does not rest on good authority, and this verb is manifestly irregular already.

† Got and gotten are often used in the Scriptures for get and have got. Gotten is nearly obsolete. Its compound forgotten is still in good use.

ast Participle.

iven.

elt R.—p. 41, &

en*

en

ght

d

rne

tten, forgot

kon

otten†

ple of this verb,
rs, the use of it
specially irregular

and beyond.
ill in good use.

Of IRREGULAR VERBS.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Hang	hung	hung*
Have	had	had
Hear	heard	heard
Hew, rough-	hewed	hewn R
Hide	hid	hidden or hid
Hit	hit	hit
Hold, be- with-	held	held
Hurt	hurt	hurt
Keep	kept	kept
Knit	knit R	knit or knitted
Know	knew	known
Lade	laded	laden
Lay, in-	laid	laid
Lead, mis-	led	led
Leave	left	left
Lend	lent	lent
Let	let	let
Lie, to lie down	lay	lain or liēn
Load	loaded	laden R
Lose	lost	lost
Make	made	made
Mean	mēant	mēant
Meet	met	met
Mow	mowed	mown

* Hung, to take away life by hanging, is regular: as, The robber was hanged, but the gown was hung up.

Of IRREGULAR VERBS.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Pay, re-	paid	paid
Put	put	put
Quit	quit, or quitted	quit R
Read	read	read
Rend	rent	rent
Rid	rid	rid
Ride	rode	ridden or rode
Ring	rang, or rung*	rung
Rise, a-	rose	risen
Rive	rived	riven
Run	ran	run
Saw	sawed	sawn R
Say	said	said
See	saw	seen
Seek	sought	sought
Seethe	seethed, or sod	sodden
Sell	sold	sold
Send	sent	sent
Set, be-	set	set
Shake	shook	shaken
Shape, mis-	shaped	shapen R
have	shaved	shaven R
Shear	shore R	shörn
Shed	shed	shed
Shine	shone R	shone R

* Where the past might be either *ang* or *ung*, &c., I have given *ang* the preference, which it certainly ought to have.

VERBS.

Past Participles

paid
 put
 quit R
 read
 rent
 rid
 ridden *or* rode
 rung
 risen
 riven
 run
 sawn R
 said
 seen
 sought
 sodden
 sold
 sent
 set
 shaken
 hapen R
 haven R
 horn
 ned
 none R

c, I have given any

Of IRREGULAR VERBS.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Shoe	shod	shod
Shoot	shot	shot
Show*	showed	shown
Shrink	shrank, <i>or</i> shrunk	shrunk
Shred	shred	shred
Shut	shut	shut
Sing	sang, <i>or</i> sung	sung
Sink	sank, <i>or</i> sunk	sunk
Sit	satt	sat, <i>or</i> sitten†
Slay	slew	slain
Sleep	slept	slept
Slide	slid	alidden
Sling	slang, <i>or</i> slung	slung
Slink	slank, <i>or</i> slunk	slunk
Slit	slit, <i>or</i> slitted	slit, <i>or</i> slitted
Smite	smote	smitten
Sow	sowed	sown R
Speak, <i>be-</i>	spoke, spake	spoken
Speed	sped	sped
Spend, <i>mis-</i>	spent	spent
Spill	spilt R	spilt R
Spin	span, <i>or</i> spun	spun
Spit, <i>be-</i>	spat, <i>or</i> spit	spitten, <i>or</i> spit†

* *Or Show, showed, shown*—pronounced *show*, &c. See Note next page.

† Many authors, both here and in America, use *sats* as the Past time of *set*; but this is improper, for it is apt to be confounded with *sate*, as given.

‡ *Sitten* and *spitten* are preferable, though obsolete.

Of IRREGULAR VERBS.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>
Split	split	split
Sprëad, <i>be-</i>	sprëad	sprëad
Spring	sprang, or sprung	sprung
Stand, <i>with- &c.</i>	stood	stood
Steal	stole	stolen
Stick	stuck	stuck
Sting	stung	stung
Stink	stank, or stunk	stunk
Stride, <i>be-</i>	strode, or strid	stridden [en
Strike	struck	struck, strick-
String	strang, or strung	strung
Strive	strove	striven
Strew,* <i>be-</i>	strewed	strewed
Strow	strowed	strorn, or strowed
Sweär	swore, or sware	swörn
Swëat	swëat	swëat
Sweep	swept	swept
Swell	swelled	swollen
Swim	swam, or swum	swum
Swing	swang, or swung	swung
Take, <i>be- &c.</i>	took	taken
Teach, <i>mis-ra-</i>	taught	taught
Tear, <i>un-</i>	tore	törn
Tell	told	told
Think, <i>be-</i>	thought	thought

* *Strew* and *strow* are now giving way to *strow* and *strew*, as they are pronounced.

Past Participle

split
 sprēad
 sprung
 stood
 stolen
 stuck
 stung
 stunk
 stridden {en
 struck, strick-
 strung
 striven
 strewed
 strown, or strowed
 swōrn
 swēat
 swept
 swollen R
 swum
 swung
 taken
 taught
 tōrn
 told
 thought

and show, as they are

Of IRREGULAR VERBS.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Thrive	throve	thriven
Throw	threw	thrown
Thrust	thrust	thrust
Tread	trod	trodden
Wax	waxed	waxen R
Wear	wore	wōrn
Weave	wove	woven
Weep	wept	wept
Win	won	won
Wind	wōnd	wōnd
Work	wrought R	wrought, worked
Wring	wrung	wrung
Write	wrote	written

DEFECTIVE VERBS

Are those which want some of their moods and tenses.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
Can	could	_____	Shall	should	_____
May	might	_____	Will	would	_____
Must	must	_____	Win	wist	_____
Ought	ought	_____	Wit or } Wot	wot	_____
	quoth	_____			

EXERCISES ON THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

Name the Past Tense and Past Participle of

Take, drive, creep, begin, abide, buy, bring,
 arise, catch, bereave, am, burst, draw, drink,
 fly, flee, fall, get, give, go, feel, forsake, grow,
 have, hear, hide, keep, know, lose, pay, ride,
 ring, run, shake, seek, sell, see, sit, slay, slide.

Of ADVERBS.

An *adverb* is a word joined to a *verb*, an *adjective*, or another *adverb*, to express some quality or circumstance of *time*, *place*, or *manner*, respecting it; as, Ann speaks *distinctly*; she is *remarkably* diligent, and reads *very* *correctly*.

A LIST OF ADVERBS.

* So, no, not, nay, yea, yes, too, well, up, very, forth, how, why, far, now, then, ill, soon, much, here, there, where, when, whence, thence, still, †more, most, little, less, least, thus, since, ever, never, while, whilst, once, twice, thrice, first, scarcely, quite, rather, again, ago, seldom, often, indeed, exceedingly, already, hither, thither, whither, doubtless, haply, perhaps, enough, daily, always, sometimes, almost, alone, peradventure, backward, forward, upward, downward, together, apart, asunder, viz., to and fro, in fine.

* *As* and *so*, without a corresponding *as* or *so*, are adverbs.

The generality of those words that end in *ly*, are adverbs of manner or quality. They are formed from adjectives by adding *ly*; as, from *foolish* comes *foolishly*.

The compounds of *here*, *there*, *where*, and *hither*, *thither*, and *whither*, are all adverbs; except *therefore* and *wherefore*, occasionally conjunctions.

Some adverbs are compared like adjectives; as, *often*, *oftener*, *oftenest*. Such words as *ashore*, *afloat*, *aground*, &c., are all adverbs.

† When *more* and *most* qualify nouns, they are adjectives; but in every other situation they are adverbs.

An adjective, with a preposition before it, is by some called an adverb; as, *in general*, *in haste*, &c., i.e. *generally*, *hastily*. It would be a piece of vexatious refinement to make children, in parsing, call *in general* an adverb, instead of in a preposition, *general* an adjective, having way or view understood. That such phrases are convertible into adverbs is not a good reason for calling them so.

There are many words that are sometimes used as adverbs; as, I am *more afraid* than ever; and sometimes as adjectives; as, He has *more wealth* than wisdom.—See next page

VERBS.

joined to a verb, as
verb, to express some
time, place, or man-
ner; as, He speaks distinctly;
and reads very cor-

VERBS.

yes, too, well, up,
now, then, ill,
ere, when, whence,
little, less, least,
while, whilst, once,
quite, rather, again,
exceedingly, al-
together, doubtless.
ly, always, some-
venture, backward,
together, apart,
ne.

are adverbs.
are adverbs of manner
by adding *ly*; as, from
er, *thither*, and *whither*,
re, occasionally conjunc
as, *often*, *oftener*, *often*
are all adverbs.
are adjectives; but is

by some called an ad-
verb, *hastily*. It would be
run, in parsing, call in
general an adjective,
as are convertible into

as adverbs; as, I am
times; as, He has many

Exercises on ADVERBS, IRREGULAR VERBS, &c.

Immediately the cock crew. Peter wept
bitterly. He is here now. She went away
yesterday.* They came to-day. They will
perhaps buy some to-morrow. Ye shall know
hereafter. She sung sweetly. Cats soon learn
to catch mice. Mary rose up hastily. They
that have enough may soundly sleep. Cain
wickedly slew his brother. I saw him long
ago. He is a very good man. Sooner or
later all must die. You read too little. They
talk too much. James acted wisely. How
many lines can you repeat? You ran hastily.
He speaks fluently. Then were they glad.
He fell fast asleep. She should not hold her
head a-wry. The ship was driven ashore.
No, indeed. They are all alike. Let him
that is athirst drink freely. The oftener you
read attentively, the more you will improve.

OBSERVATIONS.

Much { 1. As an adverb; as, It is much better to give than to receive.
is { 2. As an adjective; as, In much wisdom is much grief.
used, { 3. As a noun; as, Where much is given, much is required.
In strict propriety, however, *much* can never be a noun, but an ad-
jective; for were the question to be asked, *Much what is given?* it
would be necessary to add a noun, and say, Where *much grace* is given,
much gratitude is required.

* *To-day*, *yesterday*, and *to-morrow*, are always nouns, for they are
parts of time; as, *Yesterday* is past, *to-day* is passing, and we may
never see *to-morrow*.—When these words answer to the question *when*,
they are governed by a preposition understood; as, When will John
come home? (on) *to-morrow*, for he went away (on) *yesterday*.

† *To*, before the infinitive of verbs, is an adverb, according to Johnson,
and according to Murray, a preposition. The *two together* may be called
the infinitive.

‡ *Enough* (a sufficiency) is here a noun. Its plural, *enoughs*, is applied,
like *many*, to things that are numbered. *Enough*, an adjective, like
much, should perhaps be applied only to things that are weighed or
measured.

20

20

Of PREPOSITIONS.

A *Preposition* is a word put before nouns and pronouns, to show the relation between them; as, He sailed *from* Leith *to* London *in* two days.

A LIST OF PREPOSITIONS to be got accurately by heart.

About, above, according to, across, after, against, along, amid, amidst, among, amongst, around, at, athwart. Bating, before, behind, below, beneath, besides, beside, between, betwixt, beyond, by. Concerning. Down, during. Except, excepting. For, p. st b. from. In, into, instead of. Near, nigh. Of, off, on, over, out of. Past. Regarding, respecting, round. Since. Through, throughout, till, to, touching, towards.* Under, underneath, unto, up, upon. With, within, without.

OBSERVATIONS.

Every preposition requires an objective case after it.—When a preposition does not govern an objective case, it becomes an adverb; as, He rides *about*. But in such phrases as *cast up*, *hold out*, *fall on*, the words *up*, *out*, and *on*, must be considered as a part of the verb, rather than as prepositions or adverbs.

Some words are used as prepositions in one place, and as adverbs in another; thus, *before* is a preposition when it refers to place; as, He stood *before* the door; and an adverb when it refers to time; as, *Before* that Philip called thee, I saw thee. The word *before*, however, and others in similar situations, may still be considered as prepositions, if we supply an appropriate noun; as, *Before* the time that Philip, &c.

* *Towards* is a preposition, but *toward* is an adjective, and means, "Ready to do or learn; compliant with duty; not froward." *Toward* is sometimes improperly used for *towards*.

The *Inseparable* Prepositions are omitted, because an explanation on them can impart no information without a previous knowledge of the radical word. Suppose the pupil told that *con* means *together*, will this explain *convene* to him? No: he must first be told that *vene* signifies to come, and then *CON*, *together*. Would it not be better to tell him at once that *convene* means to come or call together?

Some grammarians distribute adverbs into classes, such as adverbs of negation, affirmation, &c.; prepositions into separable and inseparable; and conjunctions into seven classes, besides the two mentioned next page. Such a classification has been omitted here, because its utility is questionable.

put before nouns
relation between
Leith to London in

not accurately by heart.
to, across, after,
among, amongst,
before, behind,
side, between, be-
ing. Down, dur-
or, p. 51 b. from.
igh. Of, off, on,
ding, respecting,
roughout, till, to,
nderneath, unto,
out.

after it.—When a pre-
becomes an adverb; as,
up, hold out, fall on, the
part of the verb, rather
place, and as adverbs in
refers to place; as, He
refers to time; as, Before
d before, however, and
served as prepositions, if
time that Phillip, &c.

a adjective, and means
not froward." Toward

use an explanation on
less knowledge of the
means together, will this
told that vice signifies
t be better to tell him

ness, such as adverbs
perable and insepara-
the two mentious
ted here, because its

Of CONJUNCTIONS.

A *Conjunction* is a word which joins words and sentences together; as, You *and* I must go to Leith; *but* Peter may stay at home.

A LIST OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Copulative.—Also, and, because, both, for,* if, since, that, then, therefore, wherefore.

Disjunctive.—Although, as, as well as, but, either, except, lest, neither, nor, notwithstanding, or, provided, so, then, though, unless, whether, yet.

EXERCISES ON CONJUNCTIONS, &c.

Though he was rich, yet for our sakes he became poor. Blessed are the meek; for they shall inherit the earth. The life is more than meat, and the body is more than raiment. Consider the ravens; for they neither sow nor reap; which have neither store-house nor barn; and God feedeth them. You are happy, because you are good.

OBSERVATIONS.

Several words which are marked as adverbs in Johnson's Dictionary, are in many grammars marked as conjunctions; such as, *Albeit, else, moreover, likewise, otherwise, nevertheless, then, therefore, wherefore.* Whether they be called adverbs or conjunctions, it signifies but little.

But, in some cases, is an adverb; as, "We are *but* (only) of yesterday, and know nothing."

Sometimes the same words are used as conjunctions in one place, and as prepositions or adverbs in another place; as, *Since* (conj.) we must part, let us do it peaceably; I have not seen him *since* (prep.) that time; Our friendship commenced long *since* (adv.)†

* When *for* can be turned into *because*, it is a conjunction.
† As many distinctions, however proper in themselves, may prove more hurtful than useful, they should not be made till the learner be perfectly acquainted with the more obvious facts

Of INTERJECTIONS.

An *Interjection* is a word which expresses some emotion of the speaker; as, *Oh*, what a sight is here! *Well done!*

A LIST OF INTERJECTIONS.

Adieu! ah! alas! alack! away! aha! be-gone! hark! ho! ha! he! hail! halloo! hum! hush! huzza! hist! hey-day! lo! O! Ostrange! O brave! pahaw! see! well-a-day, &c.

CORRECT THE FOLLOWING ERRORS.

I saw a boy which is blind.*	We was not there.†
I saw a flock of geoses.	I loves him.
This is the horse who was lost.	He love me.
This is the hat whom I wear.	Thou have been busy.
John is here; she is a good boy.	He dare not speak.
The hen lays his eggs.	She need not do it.
Jane is here; he reads well.	Was you there?
I saw two mouses.	You was not there.
The dog follows her master.	We was sorry for it.
This two horses eat hay.	Thou might not go.
John met three mans.	He dost net learn.
We saw two child.	If I does that.
He has but one teeth.	Thou may do it.
The well is ten foot deep.	You was never there.
Look at the oxes.	The book were lost.
This horse will let me ride on her.	Thou will better stop.
I can stay this two hours.	The horses was sold.
I have two pen-knives.	The boys was reading.
My lady has got his fan.	I teaches him grammar.
Two pair of ladies' gloves.	He are not attentive to it.
Henry the Eighth had six wives.	Thou shall not go out.
I saw the man which sings.	If I bees not at home.
We saw an ass who brayed at us.	Thou can demething for me.
They will stay this two days.	John need not go now.

* These exercises will at once amuse and improve the pupil. See
Syntax, Rule 14 and 15.

† Syntax, Rule 1.

rd which expresses
r; as, *Oh*, what a

away! aha! be-
ail! halloo! hum!
lo! O! Ostrange!
a-day, &c.

was not there. †
es him.
ve me.
have been busy.
are not speak.
eed not do it.
ou there?
was not there.
as sorry for it.
might not go.
st net learn.
es that.
may do it.
as never there.
ak were lost.
will better stop.
rees was sold.
ys was reading.
es him grammar.
not attentive to it.
all not go out.
s not at home.
a something for me
ed not go now.

prove the pupil. See

ON PARSING.

HAVING the exercises on Parsing* and Syntax in one volume with the Grammar, is a *convenience* so exceedingly great, that it must be obvious. The following set of exercises on Parsing are arranged on a plan *new* and important.

All the most material points, and those that are apt to puzzle the pupil, have been selected, and made the subject of a whole page of exercises, and where very important, of two. By this means, the same point must come so often under his eye, and be so often repeated, that it cannot fail to make a strong impression on his mind; and even should he forget it, it will be easy to refresh his memory by turning to it again.

The full scope to the pupil's discriminating powers, the exercises contain all the parts of speech, promiscuously arranged, to be used thus:—

1. After the pupil has got the definition of a noun, exercise him in going over any part of the exercises in parsing, and pointing out the nouns *only*. This will oblige him to exercise his powers of discrimination, in distinguishing the nouns from the *other* words. †
2. After getting the definition of an adjective, exercise him in selecting all the *adjectives* from the other words, and telling *why* they are adjectives.
3. After getting all the *pronouns* very accurately by heart, let him point out them, in addition to the nouns and adjectives.
4. Then the *verb*, without telling what *sort*, or what *number*, or *person*, or *tense*, for several weeks, or longer, till he can distinguish it with great readiness.
5. Then the definition of an *adverb*, after which exercise him *orally* with many short sentences containing adverbs, and then on these in the book.

* *Parce* should be pronounced *parce*, and not *parus*.—See Key, p. 71.

† Those accustomed to use Mr. Murray's lessons in parsing, will perhaps think the following too difficult; let such, however, reflect, that Mr. Murray's are too easy; for when no other words are introduced than an *article* and a *noun*, no exercise is given to the pupil's judgment at all; for in every sentence he finds only an *article* and a *noun*; and in the next set only an *article*, an *adjective*, and a *noun*, and so on. There is no room for discrimination here, and yet discrimination is the *very* thing he should be taught.

6. Get all the prepositions by heart, for it is impossible to give such a definition of a preposition as will lead a child to distinguish it with certainty from every other sort of word.

7. Get all the conjunctions by heart. They have been alphabetically arranged, like the prepositions, to facilitate the committing of them to memory.

8. After this, the pupil, if very young, may go over all the exercises, by parsing every word in the most simple manner, viz., by saying such a word, a *noun, singular*; without telling its *gender and case*; such a word, a *verb*, without telling its *nature, number, person, tense, and mood*.

9. In the next and last course, he should go over the exercises, and tell *every* thing about *nouns and verbs, &c.*, as shown in the example below.

Key—In the Exercises on Parsing, the sentences on every page are numbered by small figures, to enable the reader to find out any sentence in the Key which he may wish to consult.

The small letters refer to the Nos. For example, *p.* in the first sentence of No. *a.*, directs the learner to turn to No. *p.* page 74, and remark that it says, "The verb *to be*, or *to have*, is often understood;" intimating to him by this reference, that *to be* is understood after *man* in the first sentence of No. *a.*

O how stupendous was the power
That raised me with a word!
And every day and every hour
I lean upon the Lord.

O, an interjection—*how*, an adverb—*stupendous*, an adjective, in the positive degree, compared by more and most; as, *stupendous*, more stupendous, most stupendous—*was*, a verb neuter, third person singular, past indicative, (*agreeing with its nominative *power*, here put after it)—*the*, an article, the definite—*power*, a noun, singular, neuter the nominative—*that*, a relative pronoun, singular, neuter, the nominative, here used for *which*; its antecedent is *power*—*raised*, a verb, active, third person, singular, past, indicative, (agreeing with its nominative *that*)—*me*, the first personal pronoun, singular, masculine, or feminine, the objective, (governed by *raised*)—*with*, a preposition, a, an article, the indefinite—*word*, a noun, singular, neuter, the objective, (governed by *with*)—*and*, a conjunction—*every*, a distributive pronoun—*day*, a noun, singular, neuter, the objective, (because the preposition *through* or *during* is understood,) *and*, and *every*, as before—*hour*, a noun, singular, neuter, the objective, (because *day* was in it, and conjunctions couple the same cases of nouns, &c.)—*I*, the first personal pronoun, singular, masculine, or feminine, the nominative—*lean*, a verb, neuter, first person singular, present, indicative—*upon*, a preposition—*the*, an article, the definite—*Lord*, a noun, singular, masculine, the objective, (governed by *upon*.)

* Omit the words within the () till the pupil get the rules of Syntax.

heart, for it is impossible
reposition as will lead a
ntv from every other sort

part. They have been
repositions, to facilitate

young, may go over all
ord in the most simple
a noun, singular; with-
h a word, a verb, with-
s, tense, and mood.
he should go over the
at nouns and verbs, &c.,

sentences on every page are
der to find out any sentence

example, p. in the first sen-
No. p. page 74, and remark
often understood," intima-
nderstood after man in the

the power
a word!
ery hour
l.

ous, an adjective, in the
t; as, stupendous, more
euter, third person sin-
nitive power, here put
noun, singular, neuter
r, neuter, the nomina-
power—raised, a verb,
re, (agreeing with its
in, singular, masculine,
—with, a preposition—
gular, neuter, the objec-
—every, a distributive
objective, (because the
and, and every, as be-
s, (because day was in
ouns, &c.)—I, the first
ine, the nominative—
nt, indicative—upon, a
noun, singular, mas-

the rules of Syntax.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. a.

A few easy sentences chiefly intended as an Exercise on the
Active Verb; but, to be previously used as an Exercise
on Nouns and Adjectives.

A good conscience and a contented mind
will make a man^p happy.¹ Philosophy teaches
us to endure afflictions, but Christianity^{p*} to
enjoy them, by turning them into blessings.²
Virtue ennobles the mind, but vice debases
it.³ Application in the early period of life,
will give happiness and ease to succeeding
years.⁴ A good conscience fears nothing.⁵
Devotion promotes and strengthens virtue;
calms and regulates the temper; and fills the
heart with gratitude and praise.⁶ Dissimula-
tion degrades parts and learning, obscures the
lustre of every accomplishment, and sinks us
into universal contempt.⁷

If we lay no restraint upon our lusts, no con-
tról upon our appetites and passions, they will
hurry us into guilt and misery.⁸ Discretion
stamps a value upon all our other qualities;
it instructs us to make use of them at proper
times, and turns them honourably to our own
advantage: it shows itself alike in all our words
and actions, and serves as an unerring guide
in every occurrence of life.⁹ Shame and dis-
appointment attend sloth and idleness.¹⁰ Indo-
lence undermines the foundation of every virtue,
and unfits a man for the social duties of life.¹¹

* Supply teaches us, as a reference to No. p. intimates—See 42^d on
the preceding page.—See Key, page 76, &c.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. a.

Chiefly of the Active Verb—Continued from last page.

Knowledge gives ease to solitude, and^p gracefulness to retirement.¹² Gentleness ought to form our address, to regulate our speech, and to diffuse itself over our whole behaviour.¹³ Knowledge makes our being^p pleasant to us, fills the mind with entertaining views, and administers to it a perpetual series of gratifications.¹⁴ Meekness controls our angry passions, candour our severe judgments.¹⁵ Perseverance in labour will surmount every difficulty.¹⁶ He that takes pleasure in the prosperity of others, enjoys part of their good fortune.¹⁷ Restlessness of mind disqualifies us both for the enjoyment of our peace, and the performance of our duty.¹⁸ Sadness contracts the mind; mirth dilates it.¹⁹

We should subject our fancies to the government of reason.²⁰ Self-conceit, presumption, and obstinacy, blast the prospects of many a youth.²¹ Affluence may give²² us respect in the eyes of the vulgar; but it will not recommend us to the wise and good.²² Complaisance produces good nature and mutual benevolence, encourages the timorous,²³ and soothes the turbulent.²⁴ A constant perseverance in the paths of virtue will gain respect.²⁴ Envy and wrath shorten life; and anxiety bringeth age before its time.²⁵ Bad habits require immediate reformation.²⁵

Continued from last page.

solitude, and¹ grace-
 tentleness ought to
 te our speech, and
 whole behaviour.¹³
 g¹⁴ pleasant to us,
 ung views, and ad-
 series of gratifica-
 ur angry passions,
 s.¹⁵ Perseverance
 y difficulty.¹⁶ He
 prosperity of others,
 tune.¹⁷ Restless-
 both for the en-
 performance of
 the mind; mirth

es to the govern-
 it, presumption,
 ects of many a
 s respect in the
 not recommend
 mplaisance pro-
 l benevolence,
 oothes the tur-
 ce in the paths
 vny and wrath
 eth age before
 immediate re-

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. b.

Chiefly on the Nenter Verb, including the verb *To be*.

Economy is no disgrace; it is better to live on a little¹ than to outlive² a great deal.¹ A virtuous education is a better inheritance than a great estate.² Good and wise men only can be real friends.³ Friendship can scarcely exist where virtue is not the foundation.⁴ He that¹ swells in prosperity, will shrink in adversity.⁵ To despair⁶ in adversity is madness.⁶ From idleness arises⁶ neither pleasure nor advantage: we must flee therefore from idleness,⁷ the certain parent of guilt and ruin.⁷

You must not always rely on promises.⁸ The peace of society dependeth on justice.⁹ He that¹ walketh with wise men shall be wise.¹⁰ He that¹ sitteth with the profane is foolish.¹¹ The coach arrives daily.¹² The mail travels fast.¹³ Rain falls in great abundance here.¹⁴ He sleeps soundly.¹⁵ She dances gracefully.¹⁶ I went to York.¹⁷ He lives soberly.¹⁸ He hurried to his house in the country.¹⁹ They smiled.²⁰ She laughed.^{21*} He that¹ liveth in pleasure is dead while he liveth.²² Nothing appears to be²³ so low and mean as lying and dissimulation.²³ Vice is its own punishment, and virtue is its own reward.²⁴ Industry is the road to wealth, and virtue²⁵ to happiness.²⁵

* These verbs would be active, were a preposition joined to them. Thus, "she smiled at him," "she smiled upon him," "she laughs at me." In this case, the preposition must be considered as a part of the verb.

EXERCISES ON PASSING.—No. c

Chiefly on the Passive Verb—See page 85, *bottom*.

Virtue must be formed and supported by daily and repeated exertions.¹ You may be deprived of honour and riches against your will; but² not of virtue against your consent.³ Virtue is connected with eminence in every liberal art.³ Many are brought to ruin by extravagance and dissipation.⁴ The best designs are often ruined by unnecessary delay.⁵ All our recreations should be accompanied with virtue and innocence.⁶ Almost all difficulties may be overcome by diligence.⁷ Old friends are preserved, and new ones are procured, by a grateful disposition.⁸ Words are like arrows, and should not be shot at random.⁹

A desire to be thought learned* often prevents our improvement.¹⁰ Great merit is often concealed under the most unpromising appearances.¹¹ Some talents are buried in the earth, and others are properly employed.¹² Much mischief has often been prevented by timely consideration.¹³ True pleasure is only to be found in the paths of virtue; and every deviation from them will be attended with pain.¹⁴ That† friend is highly to be respected at all times, whose friendship is chiefly distinguished in adversity.¹⁵

* *Learned*, here, is an adjective, and should be pronounced, *learn-ed*.

† Concerning *that*, see *Notes*, page 17.

SING.—No. c

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. c.

See page 85, bottom.

and supported by
ns.¹ You may be
riches against your
inst your consent.²
eminence in every
rought to ruin by
n.⁴ The best de-
unnecessary delay.⁶
accompanied with
most all difficulties
ce.⁷ Old friends
are procured, by a
are like arrows,
dom.⁹
arned* often pre-
Great merit is
most unpromising
s are buried in
erly employed.¹²
en prevented by
pleasure is only
rtue; and every
attended with
to be respected
s chiefly distin-

Chiefly on the Passive Verb—Continued.

There is not a more pleasing exercise of the mind than gratitude: it is accompanied with such an inward satisfaction, that the duty is sufficiently rewarded by the performance.¹⁰ The mind should be stored with knowledge and¹¹ cultivated with care.¹⁷ A pardon was obtained for him from the king.¹⁸ Our most sanguine prospects have often been blasted.¹⁹ Too sanguine hopes of any earthly thing should never be entertained.²⁰ The table of Dionysius the tyrant was loaded with delicacies of every kind, yet he could not eat.²¹ I have long been taught, that the afflictions of this life are overpaid by that eternal weight of glory which awaits the virtuous.²²

Greater virtue is required to bear good fortune than bad.²³ Riches and honour have always been reserved for the good.²⁴ King Alfred is said to have divided the day and night into three parts; eight hours were allotted for meals and sleep,—eight were allotted for business and recreation, and eight²⁵ for study and devotion.²⁶ All our actions should be regulated by religion and reason.²⁶ Honours, monuments, and all the works of vanity and ambition, are demolished and destroyed by time; but the reputation of wisdom is transmitted to posterity.²⁷ These two things cannot be disjoined; a pious life and a happy death.²⁸

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. d.

Different sorts of Verbs in the Imperative.

Forget the faults of others, and remember your own.¹ Study universal rectitude, and cherish religious hope.² Suit your desires to things, and not things to your desires.³ Cherish virtuous principles, and be ever steady in your conduct.⁴ Practise humility, and reject every thing in dress, carriage, or conversation, which has any appearance of pride.⁵ Allow nothing to interrupt your public or private devotions, except the performance of some humane action.⁶

"Learn to contemn all praise betimes,
For* flattery is the nurse of crimes."⁷

Consider yourself^a a citizen of the world; and deem nothing which^b regards humanity unworthy of your notice.⁸ Presume^b not in prosperity, and despair^b not in adversity.⁹ Be kind and courteous to all, and be not eager^m to take offence without just reason.¹⁰ Beware^b of ill customs; they creep^b upon us insidiously and by slow degrees.¹¹

"Oh man, degenerate man, offend no more!
Go† learn of brutes, thy Maker to adore."¹²

Let your religion‡ connect preparation for heaven with an honourable discharge of the duties of active life.¹³ Let your words‡ agree with your thoughts, and‡ be followed by your actions.¹⁴

* See note First, p. 51.

† Go and learn are, both in the Imperative.

‡ See Note, next page.

PARSING.—No. d.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. d.

the Imperative.

thers, and remember
 ersal rectitude, and
 Suit your desires to
 our desires.³ Cherish
 be ever steady in
 humility, and reject
 ge, or conversation,
 of pride.⁵ Allow
 public or private
 performance of some

aise betimes,
 e of crimes.⁷

of the world; and
 humanity unwor-
 me^b not in pros-
 a adversity.⁹ Be
 and be not eager.^m
 eason.¹⁰ Beware^b
 pon us insidiously

end no more!
 ker to adore.¹¹

preparation for
 discharge of the
 our words agree
 followed by your

perative.

Different sorts of Verbs in the Imperative—Continued.

Let all your thoughts, words, and actions,
 be tinged* with humility, modesty, and
 andour.¹⁵ Let him who wishes for an effect-
 al cure to all the wounds the world can
 inflict,* retire from intercourse with men to
 intercourse with his Creator.¹⁶

Let no reproach make you* lay aside holi-
 ness; the frowns of the world are nothing to
 the smiles of heaven.¹⁷ Let reason go before
 enterprise, and counsel before every action.¹⁸
 Hear Ann read her lesson.¹⁹ Bid her get it
 better.²⁰ You need not hear her again.²¹ I
 perceive her weep.²² I feel it pain me.²³ I
 dare not go.²⁴ You behold him run.²⁵ We
 observed him walk off hastily.²⁶

And that tongue of his, that bade the Romans
 Mark* him, and write his speeches in their books,
 Alas! it cried—give^a me some drink, Titinius.²⁷

Deal with another as you'd have
 Another* deal with you;
 What, you're unwilling to receive,
 Be sure you never do.²⁸

Abstain from pleasure and bear evil.²⁹ Ex-
 pect from your children the same filial duty
 which you paid to your parents.³⁰

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. c.

The Nominative, though generally placed *before* the verb is often placed *after* it; especially when the sentence begins with *Here, there, &c.*, or when *if* or *thou* is understood: and when a *question* is asked.

Among the many enemies of friendship may be reckoned suspicion and disgust.¹ Among the great blessings and wonders of the creation may be classed the regularities of times and seasons.² Then were they in great fear.³ Here stands the oak.⁴ And there sat in a window a certain young man named Etychus.⁵ Then shall thy light break forth as the morning.⁶ Then shalt thou see clearly.⁷ Where is thy brother?⁸ Is he at home?⁹

There are delivered in Holy Scripture many weighty arguments for this doctrine.¹⁰ Were he at leisure, I would wait upon him.¹¹ Had he been more prudent, he would have been more fortunate.¹² Were they wise, they would read the Scriptures daily.¹³ I would give more¹⁴ to the poor, were I able.¹⁴ Could we survey the chambers of sickness and distress, we should often find them¹⁵ peopled with the victims of intemperance, sensuality, indolence, and sloth.¹⁵ Were he to assert it, I would not believe it, because he told a lie before.¹⁶ Gaming is a vice¹⁷ pregnant with every evil; and to it are often sacrificed wealth, happiness, and every thing virtuous and valuable.¹⁷ Is not industry the road to wealth, and¹⁸ virtue to happiness?¹⁸

PARSING.—No. e.

ly placed *before* the verb,
cially when the sentence
when *if* or *thou* is under-
asked.

es of friendship may
disgust.¹ Among
onders of the crea-
regularities of times
they in great fear.²
nd there sat in a
man named Euty-
ht break forth as
thou see clearly.⁷
he at home?⁹

ly Scripture many
doctrine.¹⁰ Were
upon him.¹¹ Had
would have been
wise, they would
I would give
able.¹⁴ Could we
ess and distress,
peopled with the
uality, indolence,
t it, I would not
before.¹⁶ Gam-
every evil, and
alth, happiness,
valuable.¹⁷ Is
th, and¹⁸ virtue¹⁹

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. f.

The Nominative is often at a great distance from the verb

That man¹ who is neither elated by success,
nor dejected by disappointment, whose conduct
is not influenced by any change of circumstan-
ces to deviate from the line of integrity, pos-
sesses true fortitude of mind.¹ That fortitude¹
which has encountered no dangers, that pru-
dence which has surmounted no difficulties,
that integrity which has been attacked by no
temptations,—can at best be considered but
as gold not yet² brought to the test, of which,
therefore, the true value cannot be assigned.²

The man¹ who retires to meditate mischief,
and to exasperate his own rage; whose thoughts
are employed only on means of distress, and
contrivances of ruin; whose mind never pauses³
from the remembrance of his own sufferings,
but to indulge some hope of enjoying the cal-
amities of another; may justly be numbered
among the most miserable of human beings;
among those who are⁴ guilty without reward;
who have neither the gladness of prosperity,
nor the calm of innocence.³ He whose constant
employment is detraction and censure; who
looks only to find faults, and speaks only to
publish them; will be dreaded, hated, and
avoided.⁴

He¹ who through vast immensity can pierce,
See worlds on worlds² compose one universe
Observe how system into system runs
What³ other planets circle other sun,
What varied beings people every star,
May tell why Heaven has made us as we are.⁴

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. 9.

The Infinitive, or part of a sentence, being equal to a noun is often the nominative to a verb.

To be ashamed of the practice of precepts which^a the heart embraces, from a fear of the censure of the world,* marks a feeble and imperfect character.¹ To endure misfortune with resignation, and bear it with fortitude, is¹⁸⁷ the striking characteristic of a great mind.² To rejoice in the welfare of our fellow-creatures, is, in a degree, to partake of their good fortune; but to repine at their prosperity, is one of the most despicable traits of a narrow mind.³

To be ever active in laudable pursuits, is the distinguishing characteristic of a man of merit.⁴ To satisfy all his demands, is the way to make your child^b truly miserable.⁵ To practise virtue is the sure way to love it.⁶ To be at once merry and malicious, is the sign of a corrupt heart and a weak understanding.⁷ To bear adversity well is difficult, but to be temperate in prosperity is the height of wisdom.⁸ To advise the ignorant, relieve the needy, and comfort the afflicted,† are duties that fall in our way almost every day of our lives.⁹ To dread no eye, and to suspect no tongue, is¹⁸⁸ the great prerogative of innocence.¹⁰

* When nothing but an infinitive precedes the verb, then it is the infinitive that is the nominative to it; as, *To play is pleasant.* But when the infinitive has any adjuncts, as in the sentence, *To drink poison is death,* it is the part of a sentence; for it is not *to drink* that is death, but *to drink poison.*

† Two or more infinitives require a verb in the plural.—See R. 16, a.

ance, being equal to a noun
verb.

practice of precepts
from a fear of the
works a feeble and im-
mature misfortune with
with fortitude, is^{1st}
of a great mind.²
of our fellow-crea-
rtake of their good
their prosperity, is
traits of a narrow

audable pursuits, is
characteristic of a man of
demands, is the way
desirable.⁵ To prac-
love it.⁶ To be
is the sign of a
understanding.⁷ To
it, but to be tem-
perance of wisdom.⁸
to the needy, and
duties that fall in
our lives.⁹ To
no tongue, is¹⁰
ance.¹⁰

the verb, then it is the
play is pleasant. But
the sentence, To drink
or it is not to drink that

plural.—See R. 16, a

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. *h*.

The relative is the nominative to the verb, when it stands
immediately before the verb.—When not close to the
verb, it is in the objective, and governed by the verb
it comes after it, or by a preposition.*

The value of any possession is to be chiefly
estimated by the relief which it can bring us
in the time of our greatest need.¹ The veil
which covers from our sight the events of suc-
ceeding years, is a veil^o woven by the hand of
mercy.² The chief misfortunes that befall us
in life can be traced to some vices or follies
which we have committed.³ Beware^d of those
rash and dangerous connections which may af-
terwards load you with dishonour.⁴ True char-
ity is not a meteor which* occasionally glares,
but a luminary, which,* in its orderly and reg-
ular course, dispenses a benignant influence.⁵
We usually find that to be the sweetest fruit,
which the birds have picked.⁶ Wealth can-
not confer greatness; for nothing can make
that great, which the decree of nature has or-
dained to be little.⁷ Justice consists not mere-
ly in performing those duties which the laws
of society oblige us to perform, but in our duty
to our Maker, to others, and to ourselves.⁸
True religion will show its influence in every
part of our conduct; it is like the sap^t of a living
tree, which pervades the most distant boughs.⁹

* An adverb, or a clause between two commas, frequently comes be-
tween the relative and the verb.—The rule at the top is but a general
rule; for in Poetry, in particular, the Relative, though not close to the
verb, is sometimes in the nominative.—See first line of Poetry, p. 63.

† Sap, the obj. governed by to understood after Mts, and antec. to
which.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. 2.

When the antecedent and relative are *both* in the *nominative*, the relative is the nominative to the verb *next* it, and the antecedent is generally the nominative to the *second* verb.

He who performs every part of his business in its due place and season, suffers no part of time to escape without profit.¹ He that does good for the sake of virtue, seeks neither praise nor reward, though he is sure of both at the last.² He that is the abettor of a bad action, is equally guilty with him that commits it.³ He that overcomes his passions, conquers his greatest enemies.⁴ The consolation which is derived from a reliance upon Providence, enables us to support the most severe misfortunes.⁵

That wisdom which enlightens the understanding and reforms the life, is the most valuable.⁶ Those, and those only, who have felt the pleasing influence of the most genuine and exalted friendship, can comprehend its beauties.⁷ An error that proceeds from any good principle, leaves no room for resentment.⁸ Those who raise envy will easily incur censure.⁹ He who is a stranger to industry, may possess, but he cannot enjoy; he only who is active and industrious can experience real pleasure.¹⁰ That man¹ who is neither elated by success, nor dejected by disappointment, whose conduct is not influenced by any change of circumstances to deviate from the line of integrity, possesses true fortitude of mind.¹¹

are both in the nominative to the verb next it, and the nominative to the

part of his business suffers no part of it.¹ He that does virtue, seeks neither he is sure of both he is abettor of a bad with him that commences his passions, &c.⁴ The consolation a reliance upon support the most

heightens the understanding, is the most valuable, who have felt most genuine and comprehend its beauties from any good for resentment.³ It may incur censure.⁹ A man may possess, who is active in the real pleasure.¹⁰ A man, who is gratified by success, content, whose change of circumstance of integrity, &c.¹¹

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. j.

* *at* is equal to—*that which—or the thing which—and* represents two cases;—sometimes two *nominatives*;—sometimes two *objectives*;—sometimes a *nominative* and an *objective*;—and sometimes an *objective* and a *nominative*.—Sometimes it is an *adjective*.

Regard the quality, rather than the quantity of what you read.¹ If we delay till to-morrow what ought to be done^{p.49.b.} to-day, we overcharge the morrow with a burden which belongs not to it.² Choose what is most fit: custom will make it the most agreeable.³ Foolish men are more apt to consider what they have lost, than what they possess, and to turn their eyes on those who are richer than themselves, rather than on those who are under greater difficulties.⁴

What cannot be mended or prevented, must be endured.⁵ Be attentive to what you are doing, and take pains to do it well.⁶ What you do not hear to-day, you will not tell to-morrow.⁷ Mark Antony, when under adverse circumstances, made this interesting remark, "I have lost all, except what I gave away."⁸ Mark what it is his mind aims at in the question, and not what words he utters.⁹

By what* means shall I obtain wisdom?

See what* a grace was seated on his brow!¹⁰

* *What*, here, and generally in questions, is an adjective, like *many* in "many a flower."—sometimes it is an *interjection*: as, *What!*
 * *What* is sometimes used as an *adverb* for *partly*: thus, *What* with thinking, *what* with writing, and *what* with reading, I am weary.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. *k*.

The compound relatives *whoever* and *whosoever*, are equal to *he who*.

Whatever and *whatsoever* are equal to *the thing which*, and represent two cases like *what*, as on the preceding page.
—See page 16, last two notes.

Whatever gives pain to others, deserves not the name of pleasure.¹ Whoever lives under an habitual sense of the divine presence, keeps up a perpetual cheerfulness of temper.² Whatsoever is set before you, eat.³ Aspire after perfection in* whatever state of life you choose.⁴ Whoever is not content in poverty, would not be so in plenty; for the fault is not in the thing, but in the mind.⁵ Whatever is worth doing, is worth doing well.⁶

* By whatever arts you may at first attract the attention, you can hold the esteem, and secure the hearts of others, only by amiable dispositions, and the accomplishments of the mind.⁷ Whatever delight, or whatever solace is granted by the celestials to soften our fatigues,—in thy presence, O Health, thou parent of happiness! all those joys spread out and flourish.⁸ * Whatever your situation in life may be, nothing is more necessary to your success, than the acquirement of virtuous dispositions and habits.⁹ * Whatever be the motive of insult, it is always best to overlook it, and revenge it in no circumstances whatever.¹⁰

* *Whatever* is an adjective here, for it qualifies arts, &c.; and where no noun is after it, it agrees with *thing* understood. Thus, *Whatever* may be the motive, &c., that is, *Whatever thing* may be.

r and *whosoever*, are equal

equal to *the thing which*, and
as on the preceding page.

others, deserves not
Whoever lives under
vine presence, keeps
of temper.² What-
³ Aspire after per-
of life you choose.⁴
poverty, would not
fault is not in the
Whatever is worth

may at first attract
l the esteem, and
only by amiable
plishments of the
r whatever solace
to soften our fa-
health, thou parent
spread out and
situation in life
necessary to your
t of virtuous dis-
whatever be the mo-
st to overlook it,
ances whatever.¹⁰

des arts, &c.; and where
rstood. Thus, *Whatever*
may be

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. *l*.

Do, did, and have, are auxiliary verbs when joined to another verb; but when not joined to another verb, they are principal verbs, and have auxiliaries like the verb *to love*.

He who does not perform what he has promised, is a traitor to his friend.¹ Earthly happiness does not flow from riches; but from content of mind, health of body, and a life of piety and virtue.² Examples do not authorize a fault.³ If we do not study the Scriptures, they will never make us wise.⁴ The butler did not remember Joseph.⁵ You did not get enough of time to prepare your lessons.⁶ Did you see my book?⁷ Do you go to-morrow?⁸ I do not think it⁹ proper to play too long.⁹ Did he deceive you?¹⁰ He did deceive me.¹¹ I do not hate my enemies.¹² Wisdom does not make a man¹³ proud.¹³

Principal.—He who does the most good, *has the most pleasure.¹⁴ Instead of adding to the afflictions of others, do whatever^k you can to alleviate them.¹⁵ If ye do these things, ye shall never fall.¹⁶ If thou canst do anything, have^a compassion on us, and help^d us.¹⁷ He did his work well.¹⁸ Did he do his work well?¹⁹ Did you do what I requested you to do?²⁰ Deceit betrays littleness of mind, and is the resource of one who has not courage to avow his failings.²¹ We have no bread.²²

^a *Have, hast, has, hath, had, and hadst*, are auxiliaries only when they have the Past Participle of another verb after them.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. III.

The verb *to be* has very often an *adjective* after it; and some adjectives seem so closely combined with it, as to lead young people to suppose that they have got a passive verb.

Prudence and moderation are productive of true peace and comfort. ¹ If the powers of reflection were cultivated* by habit, mankind would at all times be able to derive pleasure from their own breasts, as rational as it is exalted. ² Learning is preferable to riches; but virtue is preferable to both. ³ He who rests on a principle within, is incapable of betraying his trust, or deserting his friend. ⁴ Saul was afraid of David. ⁵ And the men were afraid. ⁶ One would have thought she should have been contented. ⁷

Few things are impracticable in themselves. ⁸ To study without intermission is impossible: relaxation is necessary; but it should be moderate. ⁹ The Athenians were conceited on account of their own wit, science, and politeness. ¹⁰ We are indebted to our ancestors for our civil and religious liberty. ¹¹ Many things are worth inquiry to one man, which are not so to another. ¹² An idle person is a kind of monster in the creation, because all nature is busy about him. ¹³ Impress^d your minds with reverence for all that is sacred. ¹⁴ He was unfortunate, because he was inconsiderate. She is conscious of her deficiency, and will therefore be busy. ¹⁵ I am ashamed of you. ¹⁶ He is sadly forlorn. ¹⁷

* Were cultivated in the passive.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. n.

1. Active and neuter verbs are often conjugated with their *Present Participle* joined to the verb to *be*.*

2. A noun is always understood, when not expressed, after adjectives and adjective pronouns; such as, *few, many, this, that, all, each, every, either*.—See p. 145, under *They, those*.

1. While I am reading, you should be listening to what I read.¹ He was delivering his speech when I left the house.² They have been writing on botany.³ He might have been rising to eminence.⁴ I have been writing a letter, and I am just going to send it away.⁵ She was walking by herself when I met her.⁶ We are perishing with hunger; I am willing therefore to surrender.⁷ We should always be learning.⁸ A good man is always studying to be better.⁹ We were hearing a sermon yesterday.¹⁰

2. Those only are truly great who are really good.¹¹ Few set a proper value on their time.¹² Those who despise the admonitions of their friends, deserve the mischiefs which their own obstinacy brings upon them.¹³ Among the many social virtues which attend the practice of true religion, that of a strict adherence to truth is of the greatest importance.¹⁴ Love no interests but those of truth and virtue.¹⁵ Such as are diligent will be rewarded.¹⁶ I saw a thousand.¹⁷ Of all prodigality, that of time is the worst.¹⁸ Some are naturally timid; and some bold and active; for all are not alike.¹⁹

* Many words both in *ing* and *ed* are mere adjectives.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. 6.

The *Past Participle* has uniformly either a relative or personal pronoun, with some part of the verb *to be* understood before it.*

Make the study of the sacred Scriptures^b your daily practice and concern; and embrace the doctrines contained in them, as the real oracles of Heaven, and the dictates of that Spirit that cannot lie.¹ Knowledge softened with complacency and good-breeding, will make a man beloved and admired.² Gratitude and thanks are the least returns which children can make to their parents for the numberless obligations conferred on them.³ Precepts have little influence when not enforced by example.⁴ He is of all human beings the happiest who has a conscience† untainted by guilt, and a mind so well† regulated as to be able to accommodate itself to whatever the wisdom of Heaven shall think fit to ordain.⁵ Mere external beauty is of little estimation; and deformity, when associated with amiable dispositions and useful qualities, does¹ not preclude our respect and approbation.⁶ True honour, as defined by Cicero, is the concurrent approbation of good men.⁷ Modesty seldom resides in a breast not enriched with nobler virtues.⁸

* It is often difficult to supply the *right* part of the verb *to be*. An *adverb* is often understood. The scope of the passage must determine what part of *to be*, and what *adverb*, when an *adverb* is necessary, should be supplied; for no general rule for this can be given.

† The *Past Tense* has always a *nom.* either expressed or easily understood; but the *Past Part.* has no *nom.*—See *K...* 81, No. 268

‡ *Untainted* and *regulated* are adjectives here

SING.—No. 0.

ly either a relative or
of the verb *to be* under-

sacred Scriptures¹
cern; and embrace
them, as the real
e dictates of that
nowledge softened
ood-breeding, will
nired.² Gratitude
eturns which chil-
ents for the num-
on them.³ Pre-
hen not enforced
uman beings the
eet untainted by
gulated as to be
to whatever the
k fit to ordain.⁶
ittle estimation;
ed with, amiable
ities, does¹ not
obation.⁶ True
is the concur-
en.⁷ Modesty
enriched with

of the verb *to be*. An
usage must determine
adverb is necessary,
n be given.
expressed or easily
K. 81, No. 128

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. 0.

On the Past Participle—Continued from last page.

An elevated genius, employed in little things,
appears like the sun in his evening declination:
he remits his splendour, but retains his mag-
nitude; and pleases more, though he dazzles
less.⁹ Economy, prudently and temperately
conducted, is the safeguard of many virtues;
and is, in a particular manner, favourable to
exertions of benevolence.¹⁰

The lovely young Lavinia once had friends,
And fortune smiled deceitful^a on her birth:
For, in her helpless years, deprived of all,
Of every stay, save* innocence and Heaven,
The, with her widowed mother, feeble, old,
And poor, lived in a cottage, far retired
Among the windings of a woody vale;
By solitude and deep surrounding shades,
But more by bashful modesty, conceal'd.¹¹

We find man⁹ placed† in a world where he
has by no means the disposal of the events
that happen.¹² Attention was given that they
should still have sufficient means† left to en-
able them to perform their military service.¹³
Children often labour more to have the words in
their books† imprinted on their memories, than
to have the meaning† fixed in their minds.¹⁴

* *Save* may be considered as a preposition here.—See K. No. 140.
† In many cases the Infinitive *to be* is understood before the Past
Participle. Thus in the verb that follows *have*, *dare*, &c. is in the
Infinitive, *to be* inadmissible, and where *to* is inadmissible, the *be* that
follows it is inadmissible too.—*Man to be placed*,—means *to be left*.
See—See Syn K. 6.

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. 2.

Supply all the words that are understood. The infinitive *to be* or *to have*, is often understood.—Not supplying what is understood after *than* and *as*, is frequently the cause of error.

Disdain^d even the appearance of falsehood, nor allow even the image of deceit a place in your mind.¹ Those^t who want firmness and fortitude of mind seem born to enlist under a leader, and are the sinners or the saints of accident.² They lost their mother when very young.³ Of all my pleasures and comforts, none have been so durable, satisfactory, and unalloyed, as those derived from religion.⁴

For once upon a raw and gusty day,
The troubled Tiber chafing with his shores,
Cæsar says to me, "Dar'st thou, Cassius, now
Leap⁵ in with me into this angry flood,
And swim to yonder point?"⁶

For contemplation he, and valour formed;
For softness she, and sweet attractive grace.⁷

Is not her younger sister fairer than she?⁸
Only on the throne shall I be greater than
thou.⁹ We were earlier at church than they.⁹
I have more to do than he.¹⁰ He is as diligent
as his brother.¹¹ I love you as well as him.¹²
Virtue is of intrinsic value and good desert,
and of indispensable obligation: not the creature
of all, but necessary and immutable;
not local or temporary, but of equal extent and
antiquity with the divine mind; not a mode of
sensation, but everlasting truth; not depend-
ent on power, but the guide of all power.¹³

PARSING.—No. *p*.

understood. The infinitive
understood.—Not supplying
and *as*, is frequently the

absence of falsehood,
of deceit a place in
want firmness and
to enlist under a
for the saints of ac-
mother when very
ares and comforts,
, satisfactory, and
from religion.⁴

every day,
with his shores,
Cassius, now
angry flood,

flour formed;
attractive grace.⁶

fairer than she?⁷
be greater than
church than they.⁹
He is as diligent
as well as him.¹²
and good desert,
n: not the crea-
and immutable;
equal extent and
; not a mode of
h; not depend-
all power.¹³

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. *q*.

1. The objective after an active verb, especially when a relative, is often understood.
2. Sometimes the antecedent is improperly omitted, and must be supplied.

1. He that moderates his desires, enjoys the best happiness this world can afford.¹ Few reflections are more distressing than those we make on our own ingratitude.² The more true merit a man has, the more does he applaud it in others.³ It is not easy to love those we do not esteem.⁴ Our good or bad fortune depends on the choice we make of our friends.⁵ An over-cautious attention to avoid evils often brings them upon us; and we frequently run head-long into misfortunes by the very means we pursue to avoid them.⁶ He eats regularly, drinks moderately, and reads often.⁷ She sees and hears distinctly, but she cannot write.⁸ Let him labour with his hands, that he may have to give to him that needeth.⁹

2. For reformation of error, there were that thought it¹⁰ a part of Christian duty to instruct them.¹⁰ There have been that have delivered themselves from their misfortunes by their good conduct or virtue.¹¹

Who live to nature rarely can be poor;

Who live to fancy rarely can be rich.¹²

Who steals my purse steals trash.¹³

For if there be first a willing mind, it is accepted according to that a man hath, and not according to that he hath not.¹⁴

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No.

1. The objective generally comes *after* the verb that governs it, but when a *relative*, and in some other cases, it comes *before* it.

2. When two objectives follow a verb, the *thing* is governed by the *verb*, and the *person* by a *preposition* understood.

1. Me ye have bereaved of my children.¹ Them that honour me I will honour.² Him whom ye ignorantly worship declare I unto you.³ Them that were entering in ye hindered.⁴ Me he restored to mine* office, and him he hanged.⁵ Those who have laboured to make us wise and good, are the persons whom we ought particularly to love and respect.⁶ The cultivation of taste is recommended by the happy effects which it naturally tends to produce on human life.⁷ These curiosities we have imported from China.⁸

2. And he gave him tithes of all.⁹ Who gave thee this authority?¹⁰ Ye gave me meat.¹¹ He gave them bread from heaven.¹² Give me understanding.¹³ Give me thine* heart.¹⁴ †Friend, lend me three loaves.¹⁵ Sell me thy birth-right.¹⁶ Sell me meat for money.¹⁷ I will send you corn.¹⁸ Tell me thy name.¹⁹ He taught me grammar.²⁰ If thy brother shall trespass against thee, go and tell him his fault between thee and him alone.²¹ Bring me a candle.²² Get him a pen.²³ Write him a letter.²⁴ Tell me nothing but the truth.²⁵

* Mine, a possessive pronoun, used here for *my*, as *thine* is for *thy*.
 † Friend is the nominative, for he is named. Supply the ellipsis thus, *O thou, who art my friend, lend me, &c.*

PARSING.—No.

comes *after* the verb that
and in some other cases, it

a verb, the *thing* is gov-
erned by a *preposition* under-

of my children.¹
will honour.² Him
ship declare I unto
ering in ye hinder-
ne* office, and him
have laboured to
the persons whom
ove and respect.⁶
commended by the
ally tends to pro-
curiosities we have

es of all.⁹ Who
gave me meat.¹¹
aven.¹² Give me
thine* heart.¹⁴
¹⁵ Sell me thy
for money.¹⁷ I
me thy name.¹⁹
thy brother shall
ell him his fault
²¹ Bring me a
Write him a let-
truth.²⁵

as *thing* is for *thy*.
k. Supply the ellipsis

EXERCISES IN PARSING.—No. 8.

1. The poets often use an *adjective* as a *noun*; and some-
times join an *adjective* to their new-made noun.
2. They sometimes improperly use an *adjective* for an *ad-
verb*.
3. Though the adjective generally comes *before* the noun,
it is sometimes placed *after* it.

1. And where He *vital* breathes there must be joy.¹
—Who shall attempt with wandering feet
The dark, unbottomed, infinite abyss,
And through the *palpable* OBSCURE find out
His uncoûth way, or spread his airy flight,
Upborne with indefatigable wings,
Over the *vast* ABRUPT, ere he arrive*
The happy isle?²—*Paradise Lost*, b: ii. 404.
2. Thus Adam his illustrious guest besought:
And thus the god-like angel answered *mild*.³
The lovely young Lavinia once had friends,
And fortune smiled *deceitful* on her birth.⁴
When even at last the solemn hour shall come
To wing my mystic flight to future worlds,
I *cheerful* will obey; there, with new powers,
Will rising wonders sing.⁵
The rapid radiance *instantaneous* strikes
Th' illumined mountain.⁶—*Gradual* sinks the
Into a perfect calm.⁷ [breeze
Each animal, conscious of some danger, fled
Precipitate the loathed abode of man.⁸
3. But I lose myself in him, in light *ineffable*.⁹
— Pure serenity apace
Induces thought and contemplation *still*.¹⁰

* The poets often very improperly omit the *preposition*. It should be
"Ere he arrive *at* the happy isle." And again, "Here he had need all
circumspection," for, need of all circumspection.

† After this, the Preface, with many other parts of the Grammar,
may be used as additional exercises on Parsing.

A SHORT EXPLANATION OF SOME OF THE
TERMS USED IN THE GRAMMAR.

<i>Nominative</i> , naming.	<i>Infinitive</i> , without limits.
<i>Possessive</i> , possessing, belonging to.	<i>Tense</i> , the time of acting or suffering.
<i>Objective</i> , the object upon which an active verb or preposition terminates.	<i>Present</i> , the time that now is.
<i>Comparison</i> , a comparing of qualities.	<i>Past</i> , the time past.
<i>Positive</i> , the quality without excess.	<i>Perfect</i> , quite completed, finished and past.
<i>Comparative</i> , a higher or lower degree of the quality.	<i>Plusperfect</i> , more than perfect, quite finished some time ago.
<i>Superlative</i> , the highest or lowest degree of the quality.	<i>Future</i> , time to come.
<i>Prefixing</i> , placing before.	<i>Participle</i> , partaking of other parts.
<i>Personal</i> , belonging to persons.	<i>Regular</i> , according to rule.
<i>Relative</i> , relating to another.	<i>Irregular</i> , not according to rule.
<i>Antecedent</i> , the word going before.	<i>Defective</i> , wanting some of its parts.
<i>Demonstrative</i> , pointing out.	<i>Copulative</i> , joining.
<i>Distributive</i> , dividing into portions.	<i>Disjunctive</i> , disjoining.
<i>Indefinite</i> , undefined, not limited.	<i>Annexed</i> , joined to.
<i>Interrogative</i> , asking. [object.]	<i>Govern</i> , acts upon.
<i>Transitive</i> , (action) passing to an object.	<i>Preceding</i> , going before.
<i>Intransitive</i> , (action) confined to the actor; passing within.	<i>Intervene</i> , to come between.
<i>Auxiliary</i> , helping.	<i>Unity</i> , one—several acting as one.
<i>Conjugate</i> , to give all the principal parts of a verb.	<i>Contingency</i> , what may or may not happen; uncertainty.
<i>Mood or Mode</i> , form or manner of a verb.	<i>Plurality</i> , more than one.
<i>Indicative</i> , declaring, indicating.	<i>Futurity</i> , time to come.
<i>Potential</i> , having power, or will.	<i>Omit</i> , to leave out, not to do.
<i>Subjunctive</i> , joined to another under a condition.	<i>Ellipsis</i> , a leaving out of some thing.
<i>Negative</i> , no, denying.	<i>Miscellaneous</i> , mixed, of various kinds.
<i>Affirmative</i> , yes, asserting.	<i>Cardinal</i> ,* principal, or fundamental.
<i>Promiscuous</i> , mixed.	<i>Ordinal</i> ,† numbered in their order.
<i>Imperative</i> , commanding.	<i>Universal</i> , extending to all.
	<i>Ambiguity</i> , uncertainty which of the two it is.

* The *Cardinal Numbers* are, One, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, &c.; from the first three are formed the adverbs *once, twice, thrice.*

† The *Ordinal Numbers* are, First, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, nineteenth, twentieth, twenty-first, twenty-second, &c.

From these are formed *adverbs of order*; as, First, secondly, thirdly, fourthly, fifthly, sixthly, seventhly, eighthly, ninthly, tenthly, eleventhly, twelfthly, thirteenthly, fourteenthly, fifteenthly, sixteenthly, seventeenthly, eighteenthly, nineteenthly, twentiethly, twenty-firstly, twenty-secondly &c.

ON OF SOME OF THE
THE 'GRAMMAR.

Infinitive, without limits.
 tense, the time of acting or suffer-
ing.

Present, the time that now is.
 Past, the time past.

Perfect, quite completed, finished,
and past.

Imperfect, more than perfect,
quite finished some time ago.

Future, time to come.
 Participle, partaking of other
parts.

Regular, according to rule.

Irregular, not according to rule.

Defective, wanting some of its
parts.

Conjunctive, joining.

Disjunctive, disjoining.

Cojoined, joined to.

Transitive, acts upon.

Intransitive, going before.

Conjunctive, to come between.

Cojoined, several acting as one.

Disjunctive, what may or may not
open; uncertainty.

Comparative, more than one.

Superlative, time to come.

Elliptical, leaves out, not to do.

Elliptical, a leaving 'out' of some
parts.

Composite, mixed, of various
parts.

Elementary, principal, or fundamen-
tal.

Compound, numbered in their
parts.

Simple, extending to all.

Complex, uncertainty which of
parts it is.

Four, four, five, six, seven,
formed the adverbs *once*.

Fourth, fourth, fifth, sixth,
thirteenth, fourteenth.

Fifteenth, nineteenth, twentieth,
twenty-firstly, twenty-

Secondly, first, secondly, thirdly,
fourthly, tenthly, eleventhly,

Sixteenthly, seventhly, sixteenthly, seventhly,
eighteenthly, twentiethly,

Twenty-firstly, twenty-

SYNTAX.

*SYNTAX is that part of Grammar which treats of the proper arrangement and connection of words in a sentence.**

A sentence is an assemblage of words making complete sense; as, *John is happy.*

Sentences are either simple or compound:

A simple sentence contains but one subject and one finite† verb; as, *Life is short.*

A compound sentence contains two or more simple sentences connected by one or more conjunctions; as, *Time is short, BUT eternity is long.*

A phrase is two or more words used to express a certain relation between ideas, without affirming anything; as, *In truth; To be plain with you.*

The principal parts of a simple sentence, are, the *subject*, (or nominative,) the *attribute*, (or verb,) and the *object*.

The *subject* is the thing chiefly spoken of; the *attribute* is the thing affirmed or denied; and the *object* is the thing affected by such action.

* Syntax principally consists of two parts, *Concord* and *Government*.

Concord is the agreement which one word has with another, in number, gender, case, or person.

Government is that power which one part of speech has over another, in determining its mood, tense, or case.

† Finite verbs are those to which number and person appertain. The *Infinitive* mood has no respect to number or person.

RULE I.

A verb must agree with its nominative in number and person; as, Thou readest; He reads; We read.

EXERCISES.

I loves reading. A soft* answer turn away
 wrath. We is but of yesterday and knowes
 nothing. Thou shall not follow a multitude
 to do evil. The days of man is but as grass.
 All things is naked and open to the eyes of
 him with whom we has to do. All things
 was created by him. In him we live and
 moves. Frequent commission of crimes harden
 his heart. In our earliest youth the contagion
 of manners are observable. The pyramids of
 Egypt has stood more than three thousand
 years. The number of our days are with thee.
 A judicious arrangement of studies facilitate
 improvement. A variety of pleasing objects
 charm the eye. A few pangs of conscience,
 now and then interrupts his pleasure, and
 whispers to him that he once had better
 thoughts. There is more cultivators of the
 earth than of their own hearts. Nothing but
 vain and foolish pursuits delight some persons.
 Not one of those whom thou sees clothed in
 purple are happy. There's two or three of us
 who have seen the work.
 † Him and her were of the same age.

* Rule. An Adjective agrees with a noun in gender, number, and case as, A good man.—As the adjective, in English, is not varied on account of gender, number, and case, this rule is of little importance.

† Rule. The subject of a verb should be in the nominative; thus, Him and her were married; should be, He and she were married.

‡ All those Notes at the bottom that have Exercises in the text are to be committed to memory, and applied like the Rules at the top.

nominative in number and reads; We read.

SES.

ft* answer turn away
 yesterday and knowest
 t follow a multitude
 man is but as grass.
 open to the eyes of
 to do. All things
 n him we live and
 ion of crimes harden
 youth the contagion
 The pyramids of
 an three thousand
 days are with thee.
 f studies facilitate
 f pleasing objects
 ngs of conscience,
 his pleasure, and
 once had better
 cultivators of the
 rts. Nothing but
 ght some persons.
 i sees clothed in
 wo or three of us

same age.

ender, number, and case
 ish, is not varied on so
 little importance.
 nominatives; thus, *Him*
 re married.
 e Exercises in the text
 the Rules at the top.

RULE II

*An active verb governs the objective case, as, We love him; He loves us.**

EXERCISES.

He loves we. He and they we know, but who art thou? She that is idle and mischievous, reprove sharply. Ye only have I known. Let thou and I the battle try. He who committed the offence thou shouldst correct, not I who am innocent.

Esteeming themselves wise, they became fools. Upon seeing I he turned pale. Having exposed himself too much to the fire of the enemy, he soon lost an arm in the action.

The man who† he raised from obscurity is dead. Who did they entertain so freely? They are the persons who we ought to respect. Who having not seen we love. They who opulence has made proud, and who luxury has corrupted, are not happy.

‡ Repenting him of his design. It will be very difficult to agree his conduct with the principles he professes. Go, flee thee away into the land of Judea.

§ I shall premise with two or three general observations. He ingratiates with some by traducing others.

* The participle, being a part of the verb, governs the same case.
 † Note. When the objective is a relative, it comes before the verb that governs it. (Mr. Murray's 6th rule is unnecessary.—See No. 4, p. 65.)

‡ Rule I. Neuter verbs do not admit of an objective after them; thus, Repenting him of his design, should be, Repenting of his design.

§ Rule II. Active verbs do not admit of a preposition after them; thus, I must premise with three circumstances, should be, I must premise three circumstances.

RULE III.

Prepositions govern the objective case; as, To whom much is given, of him much shall be required

EXERCISES.

To who will you give that pen? Will you go with I? Without I ye can do nothing. Withhold not good from they to who it is due. With who do you live? Great friendship subsists between he and I. He can do nothing of hisself. They willingly, and of theirselves, endeavoured to make up the difference. He laid the suspicion upon somebody, I know not who, in the company.

* Who do you speak to? Who d'd they ride with? Who dost thou serve under? Flattery can hurt none but those who it is agreeable to. It is not I thou art engaged with. It was not he that they were so angry with. Who didst thou receive that intelligence from? The person who I travelled with has sold the horse which he rode on during our journey. Does that boy know who he speaks to? I hope it is not I thou art displeas'd with.
† He is quite unacquainted with, and consequently cannot speak upon, that subject.

* Rule I. *The preposition should be placed immediately before the relative which it governs; as, To whom do you speak?*

The preposition is often separated from the relative; but though this is perhaps allowable in familiar conversation, yet, in solemn composition, the placing of the preposition immediately before the relative is more perspicuous and elegant.

† Rule II. *It is inelegant to connect two prepositions, or one and an active verb, with the same noun; for example, They were refus'd entrance into, and forcibly driven from, the house; should be, They were refus'd entrance into the house, and forcibly driven from it. I wrote to, and warn'd him; should be, I wrote to him and warn'd him.*

relative case; as, To whom
be required

at pen? Will you
can do nothing.
to who it is due.
great friendship sub-
He can do nothing
and of themselves,
the difference. He
everybody, I know not

Who d'd they
serve under?
those who it is
thou art engaged
they were so angry
that intelligence
travelled with has
on during our
w who he speaks
displeased with.
with, and conse-
at subject.

mediately before the rela-
relative; but though this
yet, in solemn composi-
y before the relative is

positions, or one and an
e, They were refused
ouse; should be, They
ly driven from it.—
e to him and warned

RULE IV.

Two or more singular nouns coupled with AND, require a verb and pronoun in the plural; as,—James and John are good boys; for they are busy.*

Two or more singular nouns separated by OR or NOR, require a verb and pronoun in the singular; as,—James or John is dux.†

EXERCISES.

Socrates and Plato was the most eminent philosophers of Greece. The rich and poor meets together. Life and death is in the power of the tongue. The time and place for the conference was agreed on. Idleness and ignorance is the parent of many vices. John and I reads better than you. Wisdom, virtue, happiness, dwells with the golden mediocrity. Luxurious living and high pleasures begets a languor and satiety that destroys all enjoyment. Out of the same mouth proceedeth blessing and cursing.

Neither precept nor discipline are so forcible as example. Either the boy or the girl were present. Neither character nor dialogue were yet understood. The modest virgin, the prudent wife, or the careful matron, are much more serviceable in life than petticoated philosophers. It must be confessed that a lampoon or a satire do not carry in them robbery or murder. Man is not such a machine as a clock or a watch, which move merely as they are moved.

* And is the only conjunction that combines the agency of two or more into one; for, as well as never does that; but merely states a sort of comparison; thus, "Cæsar, as well as Cicero, was eloquent."
—With is sometimes used for and.—See *Miscellaneous Observations*, p. 184 and 142.

† Or and nor are the only conjunctions applicable to this rule.

RULE V.

Conjunctions couple the same moods and tenses of verbs as,—Do good and seek peace.

Conjunctions couple the same cases of nouns and pronouns; as,—He and I are happy.

EXERCISES.

He reads and wrote well. He or me must go. Neither he nor her can attend. Angel glances into the breast of a wise man, but will rest only in the bosom of fools. My brother and him are tolerable grammarians. The parliament addressed the king, and has been prorogued the same day. If he understands the subject, and attend to it, he can scarcely fail of success. Did he not tell thee his fault, and entreated thee* to forgive him? And dost thou open thine eyes upon such a one, and bringest* me into judgment with thee! You and us enjoy many privileges. Professing regard, and to act differently, mark a base mind. If a man have a hundred sheep, and one of them is gone astray, doth he not leave the ninety and nine, and goeth into the mountains, and seeketh that which is gone astray?

† Rank may confer influence, but will not necessarily produce virtue. She was proud, though now humble. He is not rich, but ‡ is respectable. Our season of improvement is short; and, whether used or not, † will soon pass away.

* The same form of the verb must be continued.

† Conjunctions frequently couple different moods and tenses of verbs; but in these instances the nominative is generally repeated; as, He may return, but he will not continue.

‡ The nominative is generally repeated, even to the same mood and tense, when a contrast is stated with *but*, *not*, or *though*, &c., as in this sentence.

oods and tenses of verbs
ases of nouns and pro

He or me must
n attend. Anger
wise man, but will
ools. My brother
arians. The par-
and has been pro-
understands the
can scarcely fail
hee his fault, and
him? And dost
such a one, and
with thee! You
Professing re-
ark a base mind.
eep, and one of
leave the nine-
mountains, and
ay?
e, but will not
he was proud,
rich, but is re-
ement is short;
oon pass away.

s and tenses of verbs;
repeated; as, He may
the same mood and
though, &c., as in this

RULE VI.

One verb governs another in the infinitive mood; as,—
*Forget not to do good.**

To, the sign of the infinitive, is not used after the verbs
bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel, let, perceive, behold
observe, have, and know.†

EXERCISES.

Strive learn. They obliged him do it.
Newton did not wish obtrude his discoveries
on the public. His penetration and diligence
seemed vie with each other. Milton cannot be
said have contrived the structure of an epic
poem. Endeavouring persuade. We ought
forgive injuries.

They need not to call upon her. I dare not
to proceed so hastily. I have seen some young
persons to conduct themselves very discreetly.
He bade me to go home. It is the difference
of their conduct which makes us to approve
the one, and to reject the other. We heard
the thunder to roll. It is a great support to
virtue, when we see a good mind to maintain
its patience and tranquillity under injuries and
afflictions, and to cordially forgive its oppres-
sors. Let me to do that. I bid my servant
to do this, and he doeth it. I need not to so-
licit him to do a kind office.

* The infinitive mood is frequently governed by nouns and adjectives;
as, They have a desire to learn; *Worthy to be loved.* For, before the
infinitive, is unnecessary.

† *Let* governs the objective case; as, *Let him beware.*
‡ *To* is generally used after the passive of these verbs, except *let*;
as, *He was made to believe it; He was let go;* and sometimes after the
active, in the past tense, especially of *have*, a principal verb; as, *I had
to walk all the way.*—See p. 61, &c.

The infinitive is often independent of the rest of the sentence; as,
To proceed; To confess the truth, I was in fault.

RULE VII.

When two nouns come together signifying different things, the former is put in the possessive case; as—John's book; on eagles' wings; his heart.

When two nouns come together signifying the same thing, they agree in case; as, Cicero the orator; The city Edinburgh.

EXERCISES.

Pompeys pillar. Virtues reward. A mans manner's frequently influence his fortune. Asa his heart was perfect with the Lord. A mothers tenderness and a fathers care, are natures gifts for mans advantage. Helen her beauty was the cause of Troy its destruction. Wisdoms precepts are the good mans delight.

* Peter's, John's, and Andrew's occupation was that of fishermen. He asked his father's, as well as his mother's advice.

Jesus feet. Moses rod. Herodias† sake. Righteousness's sake. For conscience's sake. And they were all baptized of him in the river of Jordan.

* Rule. When several nouns come together in the possessive case, the apostrophe with s is annexed to the last, and understood to the rest; as, Jans and Lucy's books.

When any words intervene, the sign of the possessive should be annexed to each; as, This gained the king's as well as the people's approbation.

† To prevent too much of the hissing sound, the s after the apostrophe is generally omitted when the first noun has an s in each of its two last syllables, and the second noun begins with s; as, Righteousness' sake; For conscience' sake; Francis' sake.

It has lately become common, when the nominative singular ends in s, or ss, to form the possessive by omitting the s after the apostrophe; as, James' book, Miss' shoes, instead of James's book, Miss's shoes. This is improper. Put these phrases into questions, and then they will appear ridiculous. Is this book James'? Are these shoes Miss'? Nor are they less ridiculous without the interrogatory form as. This book is James', &c.—K. 196-6-7.

We sometimes use of instead of the apostrophe and s, thus we say, The wisdom of Socrates, rather than Socrates's wisdom. In some instances we use the of and the possessive termination to; as, It is a discovery of Sir Isaac Newton's, that is, one of Sir Isaac Newton's discoveries. A picture of my friend, means a portrait of him; but

signifying different things,
 case; as—John's book;

her signifying the same
 cetero the orator; The city

ES.
 reward. A mans
 ce his fortune. Asa
 he Lord. A moth-

's care, are natures
 Helen her beauty
 destruction. Wis-

mans delight.
 drew's occupation
 asked his father's,
 e.

Herodias† sake.
 conscience's sake.
 f him in the river

r in the possessive case, the
 understood to the rest; as,

possessive should be annexed
 the people's approbation.
 l, the s after the apostro-
 n has an s in each of its
 s with s; as, Righteous-

minative singular ends in
 s after the apostrophe;
 mes's book, Miss's shoes.
 questions, and then they
 Are these shoes Miss's?
 rogatory form as. This

rophe and s, thus we
 ocrates's wisdom. In
 termination to; as, It
 of Sir Isaac Newton's
 portrait of him: but

RULE VIII.

When a noun of multitude conveys unity of idea, the
 verb and pronoun should be singular; as,—The class was
 large.

When a noun of multitude conveys plurality of idea, the
 verb and pronoun should be plural; as, My people do not
 consider; they have not known me.

EXERCISES.

The meeting were well attended. The peo-
 ple has no opinion of its own. Send the multi-
 tude away, that it may go and buy itself bread.
 The people was very numerous. The council
 was not unanimous. The flock, and not the
 fleece, are, or ought to be, the objects of the
 shepherd's care. When the nation complain,
 the rulers should listen to their voice. The
 regiment consist of a thousand men. The multi-
 tude eagerly pursues pleasure as its chief good.
 The parliament are dissolved. The fleet were
 seen sailing up the channel. Why do this
 generation seek after a sign? The shoal of
 herrings were immense. The remnant of the
 people were persecuted. The committee was
 divided in its sentiments. The army are
 marching to Cadiz. Some people is busy, and
 yet does very little. Never were any nation
 so infatuated. But this people who knoweth
 not the law are cursed.

a picture of my friend's, means a portrait of some other person, and
 that it belongs to my friend.

As precise rules for the formation of the possessive case in all
 situations, can scarcely be given, I shall merely subjoin a few correct
 examples for the pupil's imitation: thus, I left the parcel at *both's*
 the bookseller; The Lord Mayor of London's authority; for *my*
 thy father's sake; He took refuge at the *governor's*, the *king's* repre-
 sentative; Whose glory did he emulate? He imitated *Cæsar's*, the
 greatest general of antiquity.—See last chapter under Rule XII, also
 Rule XXX.

RULE IX.

The verb TO BE should have the same case after it that it has before it; as, — I am he; — I took it to be him.*

EXERCISES.

It was me who wrote the letter. Be not afraid: it is me. It was not me. It was him who got the first prize. I am sure it was not us that did it. It was them who gave us all this trouble. I would not act the same part again, if I were him. He so much resembled his brother, that at first sight I took it to be he. Search the Scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life; and they are them which testify of me.

I saw one whom I took to be she. Let him be whom he may, I am not afraid of him. Who do you think him to be? Whom do men say that I am? She is the person who I understood it to have been. Whom think ye that I am? Was it me that said so? — I am certain it was not him. I believe it to have been they. It might have been him. It is impossible to be them. It was either him or his brother that gained the first prize.

* When the verb *to be* is understood, it has the same case after it that it has before it; as, He seems the leader of a party. I supposed him a man of learning: that is, *to be* the leader, &c., *to be* a man, &c.

Part of a sentence is sometimes the nominative both before and after the verb *to be*; as, His maxim was, "Be master of thy anger." The verb *to be* is often followed by an adjective.—See No. 22.

Passive verbs which signify naming, and some neuter verbs, have a nominative after them; as, He shall be called John: He became the state of irregular passions. Stephen died a martyr for the Christian religion.

Some passive verbs admit an objective after them; as, John was first denied apostles, then he was promised them, then he was offered them.

X.
 of the same case after it that it
 took it to be him.*

ES.
 the letter. Be not
 not me. It was him
 I am sure it was not
 em who gave us all
 act the same part
 so much resembled
 ight I took it to be
 ; for in them ye
 and they are them

be she. Let him
 afraid of him. Who
 Whom do men say
 rson who I under-
 om think ye that
 d so? I am cer-
 believe it to have
 been him. It is
 as either him or
 st prize.

as the same case after it
 der of a party. I sup-
 the leader, &c., to be a

ve both before and after
 of thy anger."

—See No. 33.
 me neuter verbs, have a
 John: He became the
 martyr for the Christian

them; as, John was
 offered

RULE X.

Sentences that imply contingency and futurity require the Subjunctive Mood; as,—If he be alone, give him the letter.

When contingency and futurity are not both implied, the Indicative ought to be used; as,—If he speak as he thinks, he may safely be frusted.

EXERCISES.

If a man smites his servant, and he die, he shall surely be put to death. If he acquires riches they will corrupt his mind. Though he be high, he hath respect to the lowly. If thou live virtuously, thou art happy. If thou be Christ, save thyself and us. If he does promise, he will certainly perform. Oh! that his heart was tender. As the governess were present, the children behaved properly. Though he falls he shall not be utterly cast down.

* Despise not any condition lest it happens to be thy own.† Let him that is sanguine take heed lest he miscarries. Take care that thou breakest not any of the established rules.

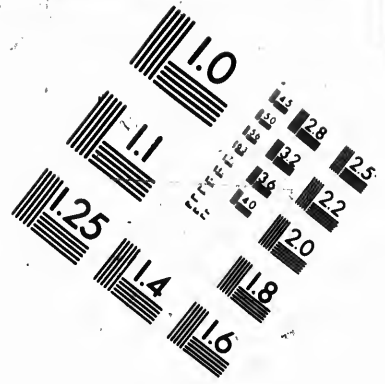
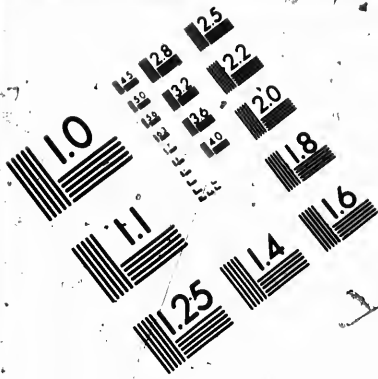
‡ If he is but discreet he will succeed. If he be but in health, I am content. If he does but intimate his desire, it will produce obedience.

* The exercises may all be corrected by the rule at the top.—K. 201.
 † RULE I. Lest and that annexed to a command require the Subjunctive Mood; as, Love not sleep, lest thou come to poverty. Take heed that thou speak not to Jacob, either good or bad.

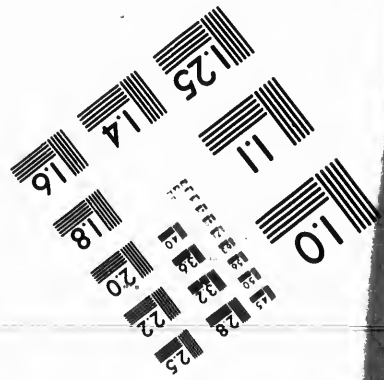
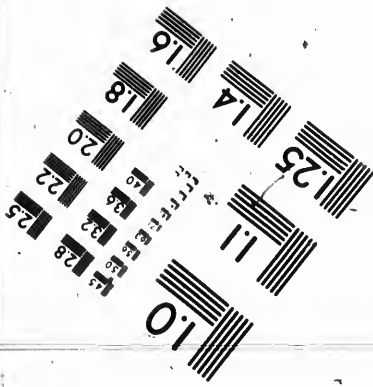
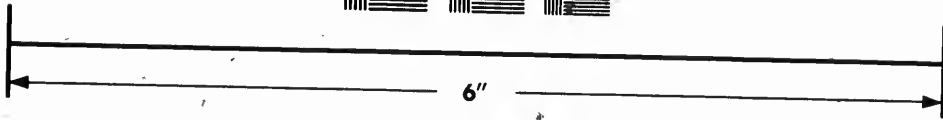
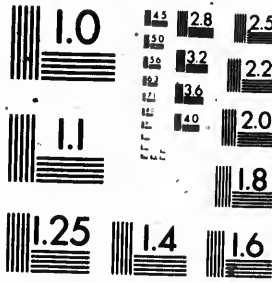
‡ RULE II. If, with but following it, when futurity is denoted, requires the Subjunctive Mood; as, If he do but touch the hills they shall smoke. But when future time is not expressed, the indicative ought to be used.

In the subjunctive, the auxiliaries shall, should, &c., are generally understood; as, Though he fall, i. e., though he should fall. Until repentance compose his mind, i. e., until repentance shall compose.—See K. 258.





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

ES 28 25
ES 32 22
ES 36 20
18

10

RULE XI.

Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions; thus.—

- Neither* requires *Nor* after it; as, *Neither* he nor his brother was in,
Though — *Yet*; as, *Though* he was rich, yet for our sakes, &c.
Whether — *Or*; *Whether* he will do it or not, I cannot tell.
Either — *Or*; * *Either* she or her sister must go.
As — *As*; Mine is as good as yours.
As — *So*; *As* the stars so shall thy seed be. †
So† — *As*; He is not so wise as his brother. †
So — *That*; I am so weak that I cannot walk.

EXERCISES.

It is neither cold or hot. It is so clear as I need not explain it. The relations are so uncertain, as that they require a great deal of examination. The one is equally deserving as the other. I must be so candid to own, that I have been mistaken. He would not do it himself, nor let me do it. He was so angry as he could not speak. So as thy days, so shall thy strength be. Though he slay me, so will I trust in him. He must go himself, or send his servant. There is no condition so secure as cannot admit of change. He is not as eminent, and as much esteemed, as he thinks himself to be. Neither despise the poor, or envy the rich, for the one dieth so as the other. As far as I am able to judge, the book is well written. His raiment was so white as snow.

* The poets frequently use *Or—or*, for *Either—or*; and *Nor—nor* for *Neither—nor*.—In prose *not—nor* is often used for *neither—nor*.—The *yet* after *though* is frequently and properly suppressed.
 † *Or* does not require *either* before it when the one word is a mere explanation of the other; as, 20s. or 21 sterling is enough.
 † See K. 204.

respondent conjunctions;

neither he nor his brother

was rich, yet for our

to it or not, I cannot tell.

our sister must go

is yours.

shall thy seed be. As

no dieth the other.

as his brother. To

as I have seen it, &c.

at I cannot walk.

It is so clear as

relations are so

a great deal of

ally deserving as

did to own, that

would not do it

He was so angry

as thy days, so

h he slay me, so

t go himself, or

no condition so

nge. He is not

esteemed, as he

er despise the

one dieth so as

to judge, the

ainment was so

or; and Nor—nor

used for neither—nor—

expressed.

one word is a mere en-

ough.

RULE XII.

The present participle, when used as a noun, requires an article before it, and of after it; as,—The sum of the moral law consists in the obeying of God, and the loving of our neighbour as ourselves.*

EXERCISES.

Learning of languages is very difficult. The learning any thing speedily requires great application. By the exercising our faculties they are improved. By observing of these rules you may avoid mistakes. By obtaining of wisdom thou wilt command esteem. This was a betraying the trust reposed in him. The not attending to this rule is the cause of a very common error.

† Our approving their bad conduct may encourage them to become worse. For his avoiding that precipice he is indebted to his friend's care.—‡ What is the reason of this person dismissing his servant so hastily? I remember it being done.

* These phrases would be right, were the article and of both omitted; as, The sum of the moral law consists in obeying God, and loving our neighbour, &c. This manner of expression is, in many instances, preferable to the other. In some cases, however, these two modes express very different ideas, and therefore attention to the sense is necessary; as, He confessed the whole in the hearing of three witnesses, and the court spent an hour in hearing their deposition.—Key, No. 208, &c.

† The present participle with a possessive before it sometimes admits of of after it, and sometimes not; as, Their observing of the rules prevented errors. By his studying the Scriptures he became wise.

‡ When a preposition follows the participle, of is inadmissible; as, His depending on promises proved his ruin. His neglecting to study when young rendered him ignorant all his life.

§ Rule.—A noun before the present participle is put in the possessive case; as, Much will depend on the pupil's composing frequently.

Sometimes, however, the sense forbids it to be put in the possessive case; thus, What do you think of my horse running to-day? means, Do you think I should let him run? but, What do you think of my horse's running? means, he has run, do you think he ran well?

RULE XIII.

The past participle is used after the verbs have and be; as,—I have written a letter: he was chosen.

EXERCISES.

He has wrote his copy. I would have wrote a letter. He had mistook his true interest. The coat had no seam, but was wove throughout. The French language is spoke in every kingdom in Europé. His resolution was too strong to be shook by slight opposition. The horse was stole. They have chose the part of honour and virtue. The Rhine was froze over. She was showed into the drawing-room. My people have slid backwards. He has broke the bottle. Some fell by the way-side, and was trode down. The price of cloth has lately rose very much. The work was very well ~~ate~~. His vices have weakened his mind; ~~and~~ broke his health. He would have went with us, had he been invited. Nothing but application is wanting to make you an excellent scholar.

* He soon begun to be weary of having nothing to do. He was greatly heated, and he drunk with avidity. The bending hermit here a prayer begun. And end with sorrows as they first begun.

A second deluge learning thus o'er-run;
And the monks finished what the Goths begun.

* Rule.—The past participle must not be used instead of the past tense. It is improper to say, he begun, for he began; he run, for he ran.

II. the verbs have and be; as chosen.

S. I would have mistook his true in dream, but was wove language is spoke in His resolution by slight opposi- They have chose tue. The Rhine showed into the have slid back- bottle. Some fell ode down. The very much. The His vices have his health. He he been invited. wanting to make

ry of having no- y heated, and he ling hermit here with sorrows as

er-run; e Goths begun.

nd instead of the past he; he run, sic he run.

RULE XIV.

Pronouns agree in gender, number, and person, with the nouns for which they stand; as.—John is here; he came an hour ago. Every tree is known by its fruit.

EXERCISES.

Answer not a fool according to her folly. A stone is heavy, and the sand weighty; but a fool's wrath is heavier than it both. Can a woman forget her sucking child, that he should not have compassion on the son of her womb? yea, they may forget, yet will I not forget thee. Take handfuls of ashes of the furnace, and let Moses sprinkle it towards heaven, in the sight of Pharaoh; and it shall become small dust. Can any person on their entrance into life, be fully secure that they shall not be deceived? The mind of man cannot be long without some food to nourish the activity of his thoughts.

* This boys are diligent. I have not seen him this ten days. You have been absent this two hours. Those sort of people fear nothing. We have lived here this many years. The chasm made by the earthquake was twenty foot broad, and one hundred fathom in depth. There is six foot water in the hold. I have no interests but that of truth and virtue. Those sort of favours did real injury.

* Rule.—Nouns and numeral adjectives must agree in number according to the genus; thus, *This boys*, should be, *these boys*, because boys is plural: and *six foot*, should be, *six feet*, because six is plural.

Whole should never be joined to common nouns in the plural; thus, *Almost the whole inhabitants* were present, should be, *Almost all the inhabitants*; but it may be joined to collective nouns in the plural: thus, *Whole cities* were swallowed up by the earthquake.

RULE XV.

The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; Thou who readeſt; The book which was loſt.

EXERCISES.

Those which seek wisdom will certainly find her. This is the friend which I love. That is the vice whom I hate. This moon who rose last night. Blessed is the man which walketh in wisdom's ways. Thou who has been a witness of the fact, can give an account of it. The child which* was lost is found.

† The tiger is a beast of prey, who destroys without pity. Who of those men came to his assistance?

‡ It is the best which can be got. Solomon was the wisest man whom ever the world saw. It is the same picture which you saw before. And all which beauty, all which wealth e'er gave, &c. The lady and lap-dog which we saw at the window. Some village Hampden, which, with dauntless breast, &c

* It does not appear to me that it is harsh or improper, as Mr. Murray says, to apply *who* to children, because they have little reason and reflection; but if it is, at what *age* should we lay aside *which* and apply *who* to them? That seems preferable to either. In our translation of the Bible, *who* and *that* are both applied to children, but never *which*. See 2d Sam. xii. 14, 15. Matt. ii. 16. Rev. xii. 5.

† *Which* is applied to inferior animals, and also to persons in asking questions.

‡ Rule. THAT is used instead of WHO or WHICH:

1. After adjectives in the superlative degree.—after the words *same* and *all*, and often after *some* and *any*.

2. When the antecedent consists of two nouns, the one requiring *who* and the other *which*: as, The man and the horse that we saw yesterday.

3. After the interrogative *Who*; as, *Who that* has any sense of religion would have argued thus?

There seems to be no satisfactory reason for preferring *that* to *who* after *same* and *all*, except usage. There is indeed as good authority for using *who* after *all*, as for using *that*. Addison, for instance, uses *all who* several times in one paper.

gent in gender, number,
The book which was

will certainly find
ch I love. That
his moon who rose
an which walketh
no has been a wit-
n account of it.
found.

ey, who destroys
men came to his

be got. Solomon
er the world saw.
you saw before.
which wealth e'er
-dog which we
llage Hampden,
&c

improper, as Mr. Mur-
have little reason and
y aside which and apply
In our translation of
ldren, but never which.

so to persons in asking

EN :
fter the words same and

the one requiring who
e that we saw yester-

as any sense of religion

preferring that to who
ed as good authority
nn., for instance, uses

RULE XVI.

When the relative is preceded by two antecedents of different persons, it and the verb generally agree in person with the last; as,—Thou art the boy that was dux yesterday.*

EXERCISES:

I am the man who command you. I am the person who adopt that sentiment, and maintain it. Thou art a pupil who possesseth bright parts, but who hast cultivated them but little. I am a man who speak but seldom. Thou art the friend that hast often relieved me, and that hast not deserted me now in the time of peculiar need. Thou art he who driedst up the Red Sea before thy people Israel. †

‡ The king dismissed his minister without any inquiry, who had never before committed so unjust an action. The soldier, with a single companion, who passed for the bravest man in the regiment, offered his services.

* Sometimes the relative agrees with the former antecedent; as, I am verily a man who am a Jew.—Acts xxi. 3.

The propriety of this rule has been called in question, because the relatives should agree with the subject of the verb, whether the subject be next the relative or not. This is true, but it is also true that the subject is generally next the relative, and the rule is calculated to prevent the impropriety of changing from one person of the verb to another, as in the 3d example.

† When we address the Divine Being, it is, in my opinion, more direct and solemn to make the relative agree with the second person. In the Scriptures this is generally done. See Neh. ix. 7, etc. This sentence may therefore stand as it is. In the third person singular of verbs, the solemn *est* seems to become the dignity of the Almighty better than the familiar *es*; thus, I am the Lord thy God who teacheth thee to profit; who leadeth thee by the way that thou shouldst go; is more dignified than, I am the Lord thy God who teaches thee to profit; who leads thee.

‡ Rule.—The relative ought to be placed next its antecedent, to prevent ambiguity; thus, The boy beat his companion, whom every body believed incapable of doing mischief; should be, The boy, whom every body believed incapable of doing mischief, beat his companion.

RULE XVII

*When singular nominatives of different persons are separated by OR or NOR, the verb agrees with the person next to it; as,—Either thou or I am in fault; I, or thou, or he, is the author of it.**

EXERCISES.

Either I or thou am greatly mistaken. He or I is sure of this week's prize. Either Thomas or thou has spilt the ink on my paper. John or I has done it. He or thou is the person who must go to London on that business.

Promiscuous Exercises.

Your gold and silver is cankered. Fear and a snare is come upon us. The master taught him and I to read. Let not a widow be taken into the number under three-score years old, having been the wife of one husband, well reported of for good works; if she have brought up children, if she have lodged strangers, if she have washed the saints' feet, if she have relieved the afflicted, if she have diligently followed every good work. The candidate being chosen was owing to the influence of party. The winter has not been as severe as we expected it to be. Him and her were of the same age. If the night have gathered aught of evil, disperse it. My people doth not consider.

* The verb, though expressed only to the last person, is understood in its proper person to each of the rest, and the sentence when the ellipsis is supplied stands thus, "Either thou art in fault, or I am in fault;" and the next sentence, "Either I am the author of it, or thou art the author of it, or he is the author of it."
Supplying the ellipsis thus would render the sentence correct:

ferent persons are separated with the person next to it; I, or thou, or he, is the

ly mistaken. He's prize. Either the ink on my it. He or thou London on that

ercises.

kered. Fear and he master taught a widow be taken a score years old, e husband, well ; if she have ve lodged stran- aints' feet, if she she have dili- rk. The candi- to the influence been as severe n and her were t have gathered people doth not

person, is understood sentence when the ellip- fault, or I am in fault: If it, or thou art the au-

the sentence correct:

RULE XVIII.

*A singular and a plural nominative separated by OR or NOR, require a verb in the plural; as,—Neither the captain nor the sailors were saved.**

The plural nominative should be placed next the verb.

EXERCISES.

Neither poverty nor riches was injurious to him. He or they was offended at it. Whether one or more was concerned in the business, does not yet appear. The deceitfulness of riches, or the cares of this life, has choked the seeds of virtue in many a promising mind. Neither the king nor his ministers deserves to be praised.

† A great cause of the low state of industry were the restraints put upon it. His meat were locusts and wild honey. His chief occupation and enjoyment were controversy.

‡ Thou and he shared it between them. James and I are attentive to their studies. You and he are diligent in reading their books, therefore they are good boys.

but so strong is our natural love of brevity, that such a tedious and formal attention to correctness would justly be reckoned stiff and pedantic. It is better to avoid both forms of expression, when it can be conveniently done.

* The same observation may be made respecting the manner of supplying the ellipsis under this rule, that was made respecting the last. A pardonable love of brevity is the cause of the ellipsis in both, and in a thousand other instances.

† Rule I.—When the verb to be stands between a singular and plural nominative, it agrees with the one next it, or with the one which is more naturally the subject of it; as, "The wages of sin is death."

‡ Rule II.—When a pronoun refers to two words of different persons, coupled with And, it becomes plural, and agrees with the first person when I or We is mentioned; and with the second, when I or We is not mentioned; as, "John and I will lend you our books. James and you have got your lessons."

RULE XIX.

It is improper to use both a noun and its pronoun as a nominative to the same verb; as,—Man that is born of a woman, he is of few days, and full of trouble;— omit he.*

EXERCISES.

The king he is just. The men they were there. Many words they darken speech. My banks they are furnished with bees. Who, instead of going about doing good, they are perpetually intent upon doing mischief. Disappointments and afflictions, however disagreeable, they often improve us. Simple and innocent pleasures they alone are durable.

† Which rule, if it had been observed, a neighbouring prince would have wanted a great deal of that incense which has been offered up to him. † Man, though he has great variety of thoughts, and such, from which others as well as himself might receive profit and delight, yet they are all within his own breast.

§ For he bringeth down them that dwell on high; the lofty city he layeth it low.

The friends thou hast, and their adoption tried,
Grapple them to thy soul with hooks of steel.

* In some cases where the noun is highly emphatical, the repetition of it in the pronoun is not only allowable but even elegant; as, The Lord he is the God. 1 Kings xviii. 39; see also Deut. xxi. 6.

† It ought to be, *If this rule had been observed, a neighbouring, &c.*

‡ It ought to be, *Though man has great variety, &c.*

§ Rule.—*It is improper to use both a noun and its pronoun as an objective after the same verb; thus, in Deut. iv. 8: Your eyes have seen what the Lord did because of Baal-peor, for all the men that followed Baal-peor, the Lord thy God hath destroyed them from among you; *them* is superfluous, as a transposition of the last clause will show; thus, For the Lord hath destroyed all the men from among you that followed Baal-peor.*

and its pronoun as a
an that is born of a
trouble;—* omit &c.

men they were
ten speech. My
th bees. Who,
good, they are
mischief. Dis-
however disa-
as. Simple and
are durable.
een observed, a
have wanted a
ch has been of-
gh he has great
h, from which
t receive profit
within his own
n that dwell on
t low.

option tried,
ks of steel.

phatical, the repetition
even elegant; as, The
out. xxi. 6.
a neighbouring, &c.
&c.
the pronoun as an ob-
Your eyes have seen
the men that followed
me from among you;
Iance will show; thus,
ng you that followed

RULE XX.

The *infinitive mood*, or part of a sentence, is sometimes used as the *nominative to a verb*; as,—For me to live is Christ, and to die is gain.* His being idle was the cause of b's ruin.

EXERCISES.

To be carnally minded are death, but to be spiritually minded are life and peace. To live soberly, righteously, and piously, are required of all men. That warm climates should accelerate the growth of the human body, and shorten its duration, are very reasonable to believe. To be temperate in eating and drinking, to use exercise in the open air, and to preserve the mind from tumultuous emotions, is the best preservatives of health.

That it is our duty to promote the purity of our minds and bodies, to be just and kind to our fellow-creatures, and to be pious and faithful to Him who made us, admit not of any doubt in a rational and well-informed mind.

* The *infinitive* is equal to a *noun*; thus, *To play* is pleasant, and boys love to play; are equal to, *Play* is pleasant, and boys love play.—a. 24, 5.

The *infinitive* is sometimes used instead of the present participle; as, *To advise*; *To attempt*; or, *advising*, *attempting*; this substitution can be made only in the beginning of a sentence.

Note.—Part of a sentence is often used as the objective after a verb; as, "You will soon find that the world does not perform what it promises." *What will you find?* Ans. That the world does not perform what it promises. Therefore, the clause, *that the world does not perform, &c.* must be the objective after *find*. Did I not tell (to) thee, that thou wouldst bring me to ruin? Here the clause, *that thou wouldst bring me to ruin,* is the objective after *tell*.

RULE XXI.

Double comparatives and superlatives are improper; thus, Mine is, a more better book, but John's is the most best; should be, Mine is a better book, but John's is the best.

EXERCISES.

The nightingale's voice is the most sweetest in the grove. James is a worser scholar than John. Tray is the most swiftest dog. Absalom was the most beautifullest man. He is the *chiefest among ten thousand.

His assertion was most untrue. His work is perfect; his brother's more perfect; and his father's the most perfect of all.

Promiscuous Exercises.

The great power and force of custom forms another argument against keeping bad company. And Joshua he shall go over before thee, as the Lord hath said. And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness, and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, &c. And the righteous men they shall judge them, &c. If thou be the King of the Jews, save thyself. The people, therefore, that was with him when he raised Lazarus out of his grave, bare record. Public spirit is a more* universal principle than a sense of honour.

* Chief, universal, perfect, true, &c. imply the superlative degree without *est* or *most*. In language sublime or passionate, however, the word *perfect* requires the superlative form to give it effect. A lover, enraptured with his mistress, would naturally call her the *most perfect* of her sex.

Superior and *inferior* always imply comparative, and require to affect them.

atives are improper;
 ut John's is the most
 ok, but John's is the

he most sweetest
 rser scholar than
 test dog. Absa-
 st man. He is
 and.
 true. His work
 re perfect; and
 all.

cises.

of custom forms
 eeping bad com-
 go over before
 And God said,
 , after our like-
 inion over the
 righteous men
 If thou be the
 The people,
 when he raised
 record. Pub-
 rinciple than a

ne superlative degree
 sionate, however, the
 re it affect. A lover,
 ll her the most perfect
 , and require to affect

RULE XXII.

Two negatives in the same sentence are improper;* thus,
 —I cannot by no means allow it; should be, I can by no
 means allow it, or, I cannot by any means allow it.

EXERCISES.

I cannot drink no more. He cannot do no-
 thing. We have not done nothing to-day. He
 will never be no taller. They could not travel
 no farther. Covet neither riches nor honours,
 nor no such perishing things. Nothing never
 affected her so much. Do not interrupt me
 thyself, nor let no one disturb me. I am re-
 solved not to comply with the proposal, neither
 at present nor at any other time.

Promiscuous Exercises.

As far as I can judge, a spirit of independ-
 ence and freedom, tempered by sentiments of
 decency and the love of order, influence, in
 a most remarkable manner, the minds of the
 subjects of this happy republic. James and I
 am cousins. Thy father's merits sets thee forth
 to view. That it is our duty to be pious admit
 not of any doubt. If he becomes very rich, he
 may be less industrious. It was wrote extem-
 porē. Romulus; which founded Rome, killed
 his brother Remus.

* Sometimes the two negatives are intended to be an affirmative; as,
 Nor did they not perceive him; that is, They did perceive him. In
 this case they are proper.

When one of the negatives, (such as, *dis*, *in*, *im*, &c.) is joined
 to another word, the two negatives form a pleasing and delicate variety
 of expression; as, His language, though simple, is *not inelegant*; that
 is, It is *elegant*.

RULE XXIII.

*Adverbs are, for the most part, placed before adjectives, after verbs active or neuter, and frequently between the auxiliary and the verb; na,—He is very attentive: She behaves well; and is much esteemed.**

EXERCISES.

We should not be overcome totally by present events. He unaffectedly and forcibly spoke, and was heard attentively by the whole assembly. It cannot be impertinent or ridiculous, therefore, to remonstrate. Not only he found her employed, but pleased and tranquil also. In the proper disposition of adverbs, the ear carefully requires to be consulted as well as the sense.

† The women contributed all their rings and jewels voluntarily to assist the government. Having† not known, or having not considered, the measures proposed, he failed of success. He was determined to invite back the king, and to call together his friends.

|| Ask me never so much dowry.

* This is but a general rule. For it is impossible to give an exact and determinate one for the placing of adverbs on all occasions. The easy flow and perspicuity of the phrase ought to be chiefly regarded.

† The adverb is sometimes placed with propriety before the verb, or at some distance after it; as, The women *voluntarily* contributed all their rings and jewels, &c. They *carried* their propositions *farther*.

‡ Not, when it qualifies the present participle, comes before it.

§ *Never* is often improperly used for *ever*; thus, "If I make my hands *never* so clean," should be, "*Ever* so clean."

¶ The note in former editions, stating that "*ly* is cut off from *exceedingly* when the next word ends in *ly*," has been removed, both because it properly belonged to the 24th rule, and because it was in some degree encouraging a breach of that rule. Two words which end in *ly*, succeeding each other, are indeed a little offensive to the ear, but rather than write bad grammar, it would be better either to offend it, or avoid the use of *exceedingly* in this case altogether; and instead of saying, "He used me *exceedingly discreetly*," say, "He used me *very discreetly*," or, if that is not strong enough, vary the expression

aced before adjectives,
ntly between the quan-
tentive: She behaves

e totally by pre-
y and forcibly
ly by the whole
rtinent or ridi-
ate. Not only
eased and tran-
tion of adverbs,
e consulted as

their rings and
e government.
ot considered,
ed of success.
ack the king,

y.

ble to give an exact
e on all occasions.
ght to be chiefly re-

y before the verb, or
rily contributed all
ositions farther.
nes before it.

If I make my hands

ly is cut off from
been removed, both
because it was in
o words which are
offensive to the ear,
ter either to offend
other; and instead
"He used me very
expression.

RULE XXIV.

Adjectives should not be used as adverbs, nor adverbs as adjectives; as,—Remarkable well, for remarkably well; and, Use a little wine for thine often infirmities, instead of thy frequent infirmities; or,

Adverbs qualify adjectives and verbs—Adjectives qualify nouns.

EXERCISES.

They are miserable poor. They behaved the noblest. He fought bolder than his brother. He lived in a manner agreeable to the dictates of reason and religion. He was extreme prodigal, and his property is now near exhausted. They lived conformable to the rules of prudence. He speaks very fluent, reads excellent, but does not think very coherent. They came agreeable to their promise, and conducted themselves suitable to the occasion. They hoped for a soon and prosperous issue to the war.

* From whence come ye? He departed from thence into a desert place. Where† are you going? Bid him come here immediately. We walked there in an hour. He drew up a petition, where‡ he too frequently represented his own merit. He went to London last year, since when I have not seen him. The situation where I found him. It is not worth his while.

* Rule I.—From should not be used before *hence*, *thence*, and *whence*, because it is implied. In many cases, however, the omission of *from* would render the language intolerably stiff and disagreeable.

† Rule II.—After verbs of motion, *hither*, *thither*, and *whither*, should be used, and not *here*, *there*, and *where*.

‡ Rule III.—*When* and *while* should not be used as nouns, nor *where* as a preposition and a relative, i. e. for *in which*, &c.—For *where*, see Key, 235.

RULE XXV.

*The comparative degree, and the pronoun other, requires than after them, and such requires as; as,—Greater than I.—No other than he;—Such as do well.**

EXERCISES.

He has little more of the scholar besides the name. Be ready to succour such persons who need thy assistance. They had no sooner risen but they applied themselves to their studies. Those savage people seemed to have no other element but war. Such men that act treacherously ought to be avoided. He gained nothing farther by his speech, but only to be commended for his eloquence. This is none other but the gate of paradise. Such sharp replies that cost him his life. To trust in him is no more but to acknowledge his power.

† James is the wisest of the two. He is the weakest of the two. I understood him the best† of all others who spoke on the subject. Eve was the fairest of all her daughters. He is the likeliest of any other to succeed. Jane is the wittier of the three, not the wiser.

* *Such*, meaning either a consequence or so great, requires *that*; as, His behaviour was *such*, that I ordered him to leave the room. *Such* is the influence of money, that few can resist it.

† *Rule*.—When two objects are compared, the comparative is generally used; but when more than two, the superlative; as, This is the younger of the two; Mary is the wisest of them all.

When the two objects form a group, or are not so much opposed to each other as to require *than* before the last, some respectable writers use the superlative, and say, "James is the wisest of the two." "He is the weakest of the two." The superlative is often more agreeable to the ear; nor is the sense injured. In many cases a strict adherence to the comparative form renders the language too stiff and formal.

‡ A comparison in which more than two are concerned, may be expressed by the comparative as well as by the superlative; and in some cases better; but the comparative considers the objects compared as belonging to different classes; while the superlative compares them as included in one class. The comparative is used thus

RULE XXVI.

*A pronoun after than, or as, either agrees with a verb, or is governed by a verb or preposition understood; as,—He is wiser than I (am): She loved him more than (she loved) me.**

EXERCISES.

John can write better than me. He is as good as her. Thou art a much greater loser than me by his death. She suffers hourly more than me. They know how to write as well as him; but he is a better grammarian than them. The undertaking was much better executed by his brother than he. They are greater gainers than us. She is not so learned as him. If the king gave us leave, we may perform the office as well as them that do.

† Who betrayed her companion? Not me. Who revealed the secrets he ought to have concealed? Not him; it was her. Whom did you meet? He. Who bought that book? Him. Whom did you see there? He and his sister. Who's pen is this? Mine's.

"Greece was more polished than any other nation of antiquity." Here Greece stands by itself as opposed to the other nations of antiquity—She was none of the *other nations*—She was more polished than they. The same idea is expressed by the superlative when the word *other* is left out; thus, "Greece was the most polished nation of antiquity." Here Greece is assigned the highest place in the class of objects *among* which she is numbered—the nations of antiquity—she is one of them.

* When *who* immediately follows *than*, it is used improperly in the objective case; as, "Alfred, *than whom* a greater king never reigned;"—*than whom* is not grammatical. It ought to be *than who*; because *who* is the nominative to *was understood*.—*Than whom* is an bad phrase as, "He is taller *than* *him*." It is true, that some of our best writers have used *than whom*; but it is also true, that they have used *other* phrases which we have rejected as ungrammatical; then why not reject this too?—The exercises in the early editions of the grammar have been excluded.

† Rule.—The word containing the answer to a question, must be in the same case with the word which asks it; as, Who said that? I (said it). Whose books are these? John's (books).

RULE XXVII.

*The distributive pronouns, each, every, either, neither, agree with nouns and verbs in the singular number only; as,—Each of his brothers is, in a favourable situation; Every man is accountable for himself; Either of them is good enough.**

EXERCISES.

Let each esteem others better than themselves. Every one of the letters bear date after his banishment. Each of them, in their turn, receive the benefits to which they are entitled. Every person, whatever be their station, are bound by the duties of morality and religion. Neither of those men seem to have any idea that their opinions may be ill-founded. By discussing what relates to each particular in their order, we shall better understand the subject. Are either of these men your friend?

† And Jonathan, the son of Shimeah, slew a man of great stature, that had on every hand six fingers, and on every foot six toes.

† Nadab and Abihu, the sons of Aaron, took either of them his censer. The king of Israel and the king of Judah, sat either of them on his throne.

* Each relates to two or more objects, and signifies both of the two, or every one of any number taken singly.

† Every relates to more than two objects, and signifies each of them all taken individually.—It is quite correct to say, *Every six miles, &c.*

Either signifies the one or the other, but not both. *Neither* imports not either.

† *Either* is sometimes improperly used instead of *each*; as, *On either side of the river was there the tree of life; instead of, On each side of the river.*

RULE XXVIII.

When two persons or things are contrasted, that refers to the first mentioned, and this to the last; as,—Virtue and vice are as opposite to each other as light and darkness; that ennobles the mind, this debases it.

EXERCISES.

Wealth and poverty are both temptations; this tends to excite pride, that discontentment. Religion raises men above themselves, irreligion sinks them beneath the brutes; that binds them down to a poor pitiable speck of perishable earth, this exalts them to the skies.

* And the cloud came between the camp of the Egyptians and the camp of Israel, and it was a cloud and darkness to them, but it gave light to these. Moses and Solomon were men of the highest renown; the latter was remarkable for his meekness, the former was renowned for his wisdom. I have always preferred cheerfulness to mirth; the former I consider as an act, the latter as a habit of the mind. Body and soul must part; the former wings its way to its almighty source, the latter drops into the dark and noisome grave.

* *Former and latter* are often used instead of *that* and *this*. They are alike in both numbers.

That and *this* are seldom applied to persons; but *former* and *latter* are applied to persons and things indiscriminately. In most cases, however, the repetition of the noun is preferable to either of them.

RULE XXIX.

*In the use of verbs, and words that in point of time relate to each other, the order of time must be observed; for example, I remember him these many years, should be, I have remembered him, &c.**

EXERCISES.

I have compassion on the multitude, because they continue with me now three days. And he that was dead sat up, and began to speak. The next new year's day I shall be at school three years. The court laid hold on all the opportunities which the weakness or necessities of princes afford it, to extend its authority. Ye will not come unto me that ye might have life. His sickness was so great that I often feared he would have died before our arrival. It would have given me great satisfaction to relieve him from that distressed situation.

† I always intended to have rewarded my son according to his merit. We have done no more than it was our duty to have done. From the little conversation I had with him, he appeared to have been a man of letters. It was a pleasure to have received his approbation of my labours. I intended to have written you last week.

* The best general rule that can be given, is, *To observe what the sense necessarily requires.*

† Rule.—*After the Past Tense, the present infinitive (and not the perfect) should be used; as, I intended to write to my father, and not I intended to have written;—for however long it now is since I thought of writing, to write was then present to me, and must still be considered as present when I bring back that time and the thoughts of it.*

RULE XXX.

It is improper to place a clause of a sentence between a possessive case and the word which usually follows it; thus, She began to extol the farmer's, as she called him, excellent understanding; should be, She began to extol the excellent understanding of the farmer, as she called him.

EXERCISES.

They very justly condemned the prodigal's, as he was called, senseless and extravagant conduct. They implicitly obeyed the protector's, as they called him, imperious mandates. Beyond this, the arts cannot be traced, of civil society. These are David's, the king, priest, and prophet of the Jewish people's psalms. This is Paul's the Christian hero, and great apostle of the Gentiles advice.

* Howsoever beautiful they appear, they have no real merit. In whatsoever light we view him, his conduct will bear inspection. On whatsoever side they are contemplated, they appear to advantage. Howsoever much he might despise the maxims of the king's administration, he kept a total silence on that subject.

† Whoso keepeth the fig-tree shall eat the fruit thereof.

* Rule.—Whichsoever and whatsoever, are often divided by the interposition of the corresponding word; thus, On whichever side the king cast his eyes; should be, On which side soever the king, &c.

I think this rule unnecessary, if not improper. It would be better to say, However beautiful, &c. See my reasons, Key, p. 123, Nos. 47, 8, 9.

† Whoso is an old word used instead of he that; as, Whoso mocketh the poor, reproacheth his Maker; it should be, He that mocketh, &c.

RULE XXXI.

Before names of places,

To—is used after a verb of motion; as, We went to Spain.

At—is used after the verb *to be*; as, I was at Leith.

In—is used before names of countries and large cities; as, I live in London, in England.

At—is used before villages, towns, and foreign cities; as, He resided at Gretna Green; at York; at Rome.

EXERCISES.

They have just arrived in Leith, and are going to Dublin. They will reside two months at England. I have been to London, after having resided at France; and I now live in Bath. I was in the place appointed long before any of the rest. We touched in Liverpool on our way for New York. He resides in Mavishank, in Scotland. She has lodgings at George's Square.*

† Ah! unhappy thee, who are deaf to the calls of duty and of honour. Oh! happy† us, surrounded with so many blessings. Woe's I, for I am a man of unclean lips.

* One inhabitant of a city, speaking of another's residence, says, He stays in Bank street; or, in the word number he used, at No. —, Prince's street. K. 195-6.

† Rule.—The interjections *Oh!* and *Ah!* &c., generally require the objective case of the first personal pronoun, and the nominative of the second; as, *Ah me!* *O thou fool!* *O ye hypocrites!* *Woe's thou,* would be improper; it should be, *Woe's thee*; that is, *Woe is to thee.*

‡ *Interjections* sometimes require the objective case after them, but they never govern it. In the first edition of this Grammar, I followed Mr. Murray and others, in leaving *we*, in the exercises, to be turned into *us*; but that it should be *we*, and not *us*, is obvious, because it is the *Nom.* to be understood; thus, *Oh happy are we!* or, *Oh we are happy* (being) surrounded with so many blessings!

As interjections, owing to quick feelings, express only the emotions of the mind, without stopping to mention the circumstances that produce them, many of the phrases in which they occur are very elliptical; and therefore a verb or preposition must be understood. As, for instance, in *Ah me*, is governed by *be fallen on* or *upon* understood; that is, *Ah, what mischief has befallen me or come upon me.*

Oh is used to express the emotion of pain, sorrow, or surprise.
O is used to express wishing, exclamation, or a direct address to a person.

Ce
priat
Acc
Abh
Acq
Ada
Agra
Aver
Best
Boas
Call
Chan
Conf
Conf
Comp
Cons
Conv
Depe
Derog
Die o
Differ
Diffic
Dimin
Disap
Disap
Disco
Dissen
Eager
Engag
Boas
↑ The
lows the
Supposed
↑ Dis
Of in
Many
other m
Fall off,
to begin

RULE XXXII.

Certain words and phrases must be followed with appropriate prepositions; such as:

Accused <i>of</i> — ^{p. 112. b.}	Exception <i>from</i>
Abhorrence <i>of</i>	Expert <i>at</i> or <i>in</i>
Acquit <i>of</i>	Fall <i>under</i>
Adapted <i>to</i>	Free <i>from</i>
Agreeable <i>to</i>	Glad <i>of</i> or <i>at</i> — ^{p. 112. b.}
Averse <i>to</i> — ^{see p. 112. b.}	Independent <i>of</i> or <i>on</i>
Bestow <i>upon</i>	Insist <i>upon</i>
Boast or brag <i>of</i> *	Made <i>of</i>
Call <i>on</i> or <i>for</i> — ^{p. 112. b.}	Marry <i>to</i>
Change <i>for</i>	Martyr <i>for</i>
Confide <i>in</i> †	Need <i>of</i>
Conformable <i>to</i>	Observance <i>of</i>
Compliance <i>with</i>	Prejudice <i>against</i>
Consonant <i>to</i>	Profit <i>by</i>
Conversant <i>with, in</i> — ^{p. 112. b.}	Provide <i>with</i>
Dependent <i>upon</i> — ^{p. 112. b.}	Reconcile <i>to</i>
Derogation <i>from</i>	Reduce <i>under</i> or <i>to</i> — ^{p. 112. b.}
Die <i>of</i> or <i>by</i>	Regard <i>to</i>
Differ <i>from</i>	Replete <i>with</i>
Difficulty <i>in</i>	Resemblance <i>to</i>
Diminution <i>of</i>	Resolve <i>on</i>
Disappointed <i>in</i> or <i>of</i> — ^{p. 112. b.}	Sswerve <i>from</i>
Disapprove <i>of</i> ‡	Taste <i>for</i> or <i>of</i> — ^{p. 112. b.}
Discouragement <i>to</i>	Think <i>of</i> or <i>on</i> — ^{p. 112. b.}
Dissent <i>from</i>	True <i>to</i>
Eager <i>in</i>	Wait <i>on</i>
Engaged <i>in</i>	Worthy <i>of</i>

* *Boast* is often used without *of*; as, For if I have boasted any thing.

† The same preposition that follows the verb or adverb generally follows the noun which is derived from it; as, Confide *in*, confidence *in*; disposed to tyrannize, a disposition to tyranny; independently of.

‡ *Disapprove* and *approve* are frequently used without *of*.

|| *Of* is sometimes omitted and sometimes inserted, after *worthy*.

Many of these words take other prepositions after them to express other meanings; thus, for example, Fall *in*, to concur; to comply Fall *off*, to forsake. Fall *out*, to happen. Fall *upon*, to attack. Fall *to*, to begin eagerly to eat; to apply himself to.

EXERCISES ON RULE XXXII.

He was totally* dependent of the papal crown. He accused the minister for betraying the Dutch. You have bestowed your favours to the most deserving persons. His abhorrence to gaming was extreme. I differ with you. The English were very different then to what they are now. In compliance to his father's advice. He would not comply to his measures. It is no discouragement for the authors. The wisest princes need not think it any diminution to their greatness, or derogation to their sufficiency, to rely upon counsel. Is it consonant with our nature? Conformable with this plan. Agreeable with the sacred text. Call for your uncle.†

He was eager of recommending it. He had no regard after his father's commands. Thy prejudice to my cause. It is more than they thought‡ for. There is no need for it. Reconciling himself with the king. No resemblance with each other. Upon such occasions as fell into their cognizance. I am engaged with writing. We profit from experience. He swerved out of the path. He is resolved of going to the Persian court. Expert of his work. Expert on deceiving. The Romans

* *Dependent, dependence, &c.*, are spelled indifferently with a or e in the last syllable.

† *Call for*—is to demand, to require. *Call on*, is to pay a short visit, to request; as, While you call on him—I shall call for a bottle of wine.

‡ The authorities for *think of* and *think on* are nearly equal. The latter, however, abounds more in the Scriptures than the former; as, *Think on me when it shall be well with thee; Think upon me for good; Whatsoever things are true, &c., think on these things. But think of* is perhaps more common in modern publications.

XXXII.

EXERCISES ON RULE XXXII.

nt of the papal
ster for betraying
wed your favours
ons. His abhor-
e. I differ with
ry different then
mpliance to his
ot comply to his
agement for the
need not think it
ness, or deroga-
ly upon counsel.
e? Conformable
with the sacred

ing it. He had
ommands. Thy
more than they
ed for it. Re-
g. No resem-
such occasions
I am engaged
om experience.
He is resolved
Expert of his
The Romans

rently with a or e in
s to pay a short visit,
call for a bottle of
nearly equal. The lat-
than the former; as,
ink upon me for good;
things. But think of

reduced the world* to their own power. He provided them of every thing. We insist for it. He seems to have a taste of such studies.

He died for thirst. He found none on whom he could safely confide. I dissent with the examiner. It was very well adapted for his capacity. He acquitted me from any imputation. You are conversant† with that science. They boast in their great riches. Call of James to walk with you. When we have had a true taste for the pleasures of virtue, we can have no relish for those of vice. I will wait of you. He is glad of calamities;‡ She is glad at his company. A strict observance after times and fashions. This book is replete in errors. These are exceptions to the general rule. He died a martyr to Christianity. This change is to the better. His productions were scrupulously exact, and conformable with all the rules of correct writing. He died of the sword. She finds a difficulty of fixing her mind. This prince was naturally averse|| from war. A freeholder is born with an aversion from subjection.

* Reduce under, is to subdue. In other cases to follow it; as, To reduce to practice, to fractions, &c.

† We say conversant with men, in things. Addison was conversant among the writings of the most polite authors, and conversant about worldly affairs. Conversant with is preferable.

‡ Glad of is perhaps more proper, when the cause of joy is something gained or possessed; and glad at, when something befalls another; as, Jonah was exceedingly glad of the gourd; He that is glad of calamities, shall not be unpunished.

|| Averse and aversion requires to after them rather than from, but both are used, and sometimes even by the same author.

RULE XXXIII.

All the parts of a sentence should correspond to each other, and a regular and dependent construction throughout be carefully preserved.* For example, the sentence, "He was more beloved, but not so much admired, as Cinthio," is inaccurate; because *more* requires *than* after it, which is no where found in the sentence. It should be, "He was more beloved *than* Cinthio, but not so much admired."

A proper choice of words and a perspicuous arrangement should be carefully attended to.

EXERCISES.

The reward is his due, and it has²⁰ already or will hereafter, be given to him. He was guided by interests always different,³² sometimes contrary to those of the community. The intentions of some of these philosophers, nay of many, might²⁰ and probably were good. No person was ever so perplexed,¹¹ or sustained²⁵ the mortifications as he has done to-day. He was more bold and active,²⁵ but not so wise and studious as his companion. Then said they unto him, what shall we do that we might work²⁰ the works of God? Sincerity is as valuable,¹¹ and even more valuable,²⁶ than knowledge. The greatest masters of critical learning differ³² among one another.

But from this dread, the recovery of the empire was become desperate; no wisdom could obviate its decâdence. He was at one time thought to be a supposititious child.

* This rule is scarcely of any value as a rule: for every sentence on this page, except the last two, may be corrected by the preceding rules, as the reference by small figures will show; but it has been retained, because where two words require a different construction, it will tend to correct the common error of forgetting the construction of the former word, and adhering to that of the latter.

RULE XXXIV.

A is used before nouns in the singular number only
*The** is used before nouns in both numbers.

The article is omitted before a noun that stands for a whole species; and before the names of minerals, metals, arts, &c.

The latter of two nouns after a comparative should have no article when they both refer to one person; as, He is a better reader than writer.

To use the *Articles* properly is of the greatest importance; but it is impossible to give a rule applicable to every case.

Examples of the improper use and omission of the articles

EXERCISES.

Reason was given to a man to control his passions. The gold is corrupting. A man is the noblest work of the creation. Wisest and best men are sometimes betrayed into errors. We must act our part with a constancy, though reward of our constancy be distant. There are some evils of life, which equally affect prince and people. Purity has its seat in the heart: but extends its influence over so much of outward conduct as to form the great and material part of a character. At worst, I could but incur a gentle reprimand. The profligate man is seldom or never found to be the good husband, the good father, or the beneficent neighbour.

† He has been much censured for paying a little attention to his business. So bold a breach of order, called for little severity in punishing the offender.

* *The* is used before an *individual* representing the whole of its species when compared with another individual representing another species; thus, *The* dog is a more grateful animal than *the* cat; i. e. *All* dogs are more grateful than cats.

† A nice distinction of the sense is sometimes made by the use or omission of the article *a*. If I say, he behaved with a little reverence; I praise him a little. If I say, he behaved with little reverence; I blame him.

correspond to each
 action throughout
 the sentence. "He
 fired, as Cynthia,"
 after it, which is
 should be. He was
 oh admired,
 ous arrangement

has²⁰ already
 im. He was
 parent,²² some-
 community.
 philosophers,
 ly were good.
 ed,¹¹ or sus-
 has done to-
 ive,²⁵ but not
 union. Then
 e do that we
 Sincerity is
 uable,²⁶ than
 s of critical
 r.
 recovery of
 ; no wisdom
 was at one
 child.

every sentence on
 the preceding rules,
 has been retained.
 action, it will tend
 ction of the former



RULE XXXV.

An *ellipsis*, or omission of some words, is frequently admitted. Thus, instead of saying, He was a learned man, he was a wise man, and he was a good man: we say, He was a *learned, wise, and good* man.

EXERCISES.

A house and a garden. The laws of God, and the laws of man. Avarice and cunning may acquire an estate: but avarice and cunning cannot gain friends. His crimes had brought him into extreme distress, and extreme perplexity. He has an affectionate brother and an affectionate sister. By presumption, and by vanity, we provoke enmity, and we incur contempt. Genuine virtue supposes our benevolence to be strengthened and to be confirmed by principle. He is temperate, he is disinterested, he is benevolent. Perseverance in laudable pursuits, will reward all our toils, and will produce effects beyond our calculation. We often commend imprudently, as well as censure imprudently. Destitute of principle, he regarded neither his family nor his friends, nor his reputation. He insulted every man and every woman in the company. The temper of him who is always in the bustle of the world will be often ruffled and will be often disturbed.

*He regards his word, but thou dost not regard it. They must be punished, and they shall be punished. We succeeded, but they did not succeed.

* The auxiliaries of the compound tenses are often used alone; as, We have done it, but thou hast not; & c. thou hast not done it.

RULE XXXVI.

An ellipsis is not allowable when it would obscure the sentence, weaken its force, or be attended with an impropriety; for example, "We speak that we do know, and testify that we have seen," should be, We speak that which we do know, and testify that which we have seen.

EXERCISES.

*A noble spirit disdaineth the malice of fortune; his greatness of soul is not to be cast down. A house and † orchard. A horse and ass. A learned and amiable young man. I gladly shunned who gladly fled from me. A taste for useful knowledge will provide for us a great and noble entertainment when others leave us. They enjoy also a free constitution and laws. The captain had several men died in his ship of the scurvy. I must, however, be so candid to own I have been mistaken. The sacrifices of virtue will not only be rewarded hereafter, but recompensed even in this life. Oh, Piety! Virtue! how insensible have I been to thy charms! That is a property most men have, or at least may attain. There is nothing men are more deficient in, than knowing their own characters. Why do ye that which is not lawful to do on the Sabbath days? Neither has he, nor any other persons, suspected so much dissimulation.

* A noble spirit disdaineth, &c., should be, A man of a noble spirit disdaineth, &c. This will render the sentence consistent with the rules of grammar and with common sense: to talk of the soul of a spirit is ridiculous.

† The article being once expressed, the repetition of it becomes unnecessary, except when a different form of it is requisite; as, A house and an orchard; and when some peculiar emphasis requires a repetition, as, Not only the year, but the day and the hour were appointed.

CONSTRUCTION.

The four following lines are construed by way of example. They were parsed at page 54. They are construed here, because the pupil should now be able to apply the Rules of Syntax.

Oh! how stupendous was the power
That raised me with a word;
And* every day and every hour,
I lean upon the Lord.

How stupendous, adverbs are for the most part placed before adjectives, &c. *A power* is understood thus, *stupendous a power*, † an adjective agrees with a noun—*A power*, the article *a* is used before nouns in the singular number only—the *power*, *the* is used before nouns in both numbers—the *power was*, a verb agrees with its nominative—the *power that*, the relative agrees with its antecedent, &c. *That raised*, a verb agrees with its nom.—*Raised me*, an active verb governs the objective case—*With a word*, prepositions govern the objective—*A word*, *A* is used before nouns in the singular, &c. (*During* is understood) *during every day*, prepositions govern the objective case—*Every day*, an adjective agrees with a noun—*Day* and *hour*, conjunctions couple the same cases of nouns and pronouns; for *hour* is governed by *during* understood again—*Every hour*, an adjective agrees, &c.—*I lean*, a verb agrees with its nominative—*Upon the Lord*, prepositions govern the objective case.

The possessive pronouns, *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *our*, *your*, *their*, and *its*, must be construed exactly like nouns in the possessive case, for a pronoun is an exact resemblance of a noun in every thing but *one*; namely, it will not admit of an adjective before it like a noun. *His* is equal to *John's*, and *her* to *Ann's*, and *their* to the *men's*, in the following sentences:

John lost *his* gloves, i. e. John lost *John's* gloves.—Ann found *her* book, i. e. Ann found *Ann's* book. The men took off *their* hats, i. e. The men took off the *men's* hats. The garden is productive, and *its* fruit is good, i. e. the *garden's* fruit. In all these cases, and in such phrases as, *my* house—*thy* field—*our* lands—*your* estates—*their* property—*whose* horse,—the rule is, “When two nouns come together, signifying different things, the first is put in the possessive case.”

* It is impossible to construe bad grammar. And here is so very vaguely used, that the rule, “Conjunctions couple the same moods and tenses of verbs, and the same cases of nouns and pronouns.”

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES

ON THE

RULES OF SYNTAX.

John writes pretty. Come here, James. Where are you going, Thomas? I shall never do so no more. The train of our ideas are often interrupted. Was you present at last meeting? He need not be in so much haste. He dare not act otherwise than he does. Him whom they seek is in the house. George or I is the person. He or they is much to be blamed. The troop consist of fifty men. Those set of books was a valuable present. A pillar sixty foot high. His conduct evinced the most extreme vanity. These trees are remarkable tall. He acted bolder than was expected. This is so. I gave the book to Elizabeth. Elizabeth appears amiably. She goes there to-morrow. From whence came they? Who do you lodge with now? He was born at London, but he died in Bath. If he be sincere I am satisfied. Her father and her were at church. The master requested him and I to read more distinctly. It is no more but his due. Flatterers flatter as long, and no longer than they have expectations of gain. John told the same story as you told. This is the largest tree which I have ever seen.

will not apply in this passage.—From the sense, it is evident that *And* should be *For*, meaning *not only so, but—every day, &c.*

† Or, how stupendous the power was, but it is certainly better to supply a power thus; O how stupendous a power was the power that raised me with a word.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Let he and I read the next chapter. She is free of pain. Those sort of dealings are unjust. David the son of Jesse was the youngest of his brothers. You was very kind to him, he said. Well, says I, what does thou think of him now. James is one of those boys that was kept in at school, for bad behaviour. Thou, James, did deny the deed. Neither good nor evil come of themselves. We need not to be afraid. He expected to have gained more by the bargain. You should drink plenty of goat milk. It was him who spoke first. Do you like ass milk? Is it me that you mean? Who did you buy your grammar from? If one takes a wrong method at first setting out, it will lead them astray. Neither man ~~nor~~ woman were present. I am more taller than you ~~and~~ ^{is} the same lady who sang so sweetly. After the most straitest sect of our religion, I lived a Pharisee. Is not thy wickedness great? and thine iniquities infinite? There was more sophists than one. If a person have lived twenty or thirty years, he should have some experience. If this were his meaning, the prediction has failed. Fidelity and truth is the foundation of all justice. His associates in wickedness will not fail to mark the alteration of his conduct. Thy rod and thy staff they comfort me.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

And when they had lift up their eyes, they saw no man save Jesus only. Strive not with a man without a cause, if he have doné thee no harm. I wrote to, and cautioned the captain against it. Now both the chief priests and Pharisees had given a commandment, that if any man knew where he were, he should show it, that they might take him. The girl her book is torn in pieces. It is not me who he is in love with. He which commands himself, commands the whole world. Nothing is more lovelier than virtue.

The peoples happiness is the statesmans honour. Changed to a worsor shape thou canst not be. I have drunk no spirituons liquors this six years. He is taller than me, but I am stronger than him. Solid peace and contentment consists neither in beauty or riches, but in the favour of God. After who is the King of Israel come out? The reciprocations of love and friendship between he and I, have been many and sincere. Abuse of mercies ripen us for judgment. Peter and John is not at school to-day. Three of them was taken into custody. To study diligently, and behave genteely, is commendable. The enemies who we have most to fear are those of our own hearts. Régulus was reckoned the most consummate warrior that Rome could then produce. Suppose life never so long, fresh accessions of knowledge may still be made.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Surely thou who reads so much in the Bible, can tell me what became of Elijah. Neither the master nor the scholars is reading. Trust not him, whom, you know, is dishonest. I love no interests but that of truth and virtue. Every imagination of the thoughts of the heart are evil continually. No one can be blamed for taking due care of their health. They crucified him, and two others with him, on either side one, and Jesus in the midst.

I have read Popes Homer, and Drydens Virgil. He that is diligent you should commend. There was an earthquake which made the earth to tremble. And God said to Solomon, Wisdom and knowledge is granted unto thee, &c. I cannot commend him for justifying himself, when he knows that his conduct was so very improper. He was very much made on at school. Though he were a son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered. If he is alone tell him the news; but if there is any body with him, do not tell him. They ride faster than us. Though the measure be mysterious, it is worthy of attention. If he does but approve my endeavours, it will be an ample reward. Was it him who came last? Yes, it was him.

For ever in this humble cell,
Let thee and I, my fair one, dwell.

E
ract
were
wor
sets
Nei
com
man
gen
dle
tage
T
serv
king
My
my
prop
ing
Not
of d
Who
to, c
into
hers
I an
the
pict
sembl
enjo
is ne

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Every man should act suitable to his character and station in life. His arguments were exceeding clear. I only spoke three words on that subject. The ant and the bee sets a good example before drowsy boys. Neither in this world, neither in the world to come. Evil communications corrupts good manners. Hannibal was one of the greatest generals whom the world ever saw. The middle station of life seems to be the most advantageously situated for gaining of wisdom.

These are the rules of grammar, by the observing which you may avoid mistakes. The king conferred on him the title of a duke. My exercises are not well wrote, I did not hold my pen well. Grammar teaches us to speak proper. She accused her companion for having betrayed her. I will not dissent with her. Nothing shall make me swerve out of the path of duty and honour. Who shall I give it to? Who are you looking for? It is a diminution to, or a derogation of their judgment. It fell into their notice or cognizance. She values herself for her fortune. That is a book which I am much pleased with. I have been to see the coronation, and a fine sight it was. That picture of the emperor's is a very exact resemblance of him. Every thing that we here enjoy, change, decay, and come to an end. It is not him they blame so much.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

No people has more faults than they that pretend to have none. The laws of Draco is said to have been wrote with blood. It is so clear, or so obvious, as I need not explain it. She taught him and I to read. The more greater a bad man's accomplishments are, the more dangerous he is to society, and the more less fit for a companion. Each has their own faults, and every one should endeavour to correct their own. Let your promises be few, and such that you can perform.

His being at enmity with Caesar and Antony were the cause of perpetual discord. Their being forced to their books in an age at enmity with all restraint, have been the reason why many have hated books all their lives. There was a coffee-house at that end of the town, in which several gentlemen used to meet of an evening. Do not despise the state of the poor, lest it becomes your own condition. It was his duty to have interposed his authority in an affair of so much importance. He spent his whole life in the doing good. Every gentleman who frequented the house, and conversed with the erectors of this occasional club, were invited to pass an evening when they thought fit. The winter has not been so severe as we expected it to have been. The rest (of the stars) in circuit walls this universe. Sir, if thou have bórne him hence, tell me where thou hast laid him.

A
them
not
and
their
of th
him,
take
I am
ciplin
I am
who
This
enou
Sene
of or
that
gram
seller
W
Who
this?
verbs
groun
seen
Mary
If w
the h
is th
A ma
in a
script

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

A lampoon, or a satire, does not carry in them robbery or murder. She and you were not mistaken in her conjectures. My sister and I, as well as my brother, are employed in their respective occupations. He repents him of that indiscreet action. It was me, and not him, that wrote it. Art thou him? I shall take care that no one shall suffer no injury. I am a man who approves of wholesome discipline, and who recommend it to others; but I am not a person who promotes severity, or who object to mild and generous treatment. This Jackanāpes has hit me in a right place enough. Prosperity, as truly asserted by Seneca, it very much obstructs the knowledge of ourselves. To do to others as we would that they should do to us, it is our duty. This grammar was purchased at Ogle's the bookseller's. The Council was not unanimous.

Who spilt the ink upon the table? Him. Who lost this book? Me. Whose pen is this? Johns. There is in fact no impersonal verbs in any language. And he spitted on the ground, and anointed his eyes. Had I never seen ye, I had never known ye. The ship Mary and Ann were restored to their owners. If we consult the improvement of mind, or the health of body, it is well known exercise is the great instrument for promoting both. A man may see a metaphor or an allegory in a picture, as well as read them in a description.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

I had no sooner placed her at my right hand, by the fire, but she opened to me the reason of her visit. A prudent wife, she shall be blessed. The house you speak of, it cost me five hundred pounds. Did I not tell thee, O thee infamous wretch! that thou wouldst bring me to ruin? Not only the counsel's and attorney's, but the judge's opinion also favoured his cause. It was the men's, women's, and children's lot, to suffer great calamities. That is the eldest son of the King of England's. Lord Feversham's the general's tent. This palace had been the grand Sultan's Mahomet's. They did not every man cast away the abomination of their eyes.

* I am purposed. He is arrived. They were deserted from their regiment. Whose works are these? They are Cicero, the most eloquent of men's. The mighty rivals are now at length agreed. The time of William making the experiment, at length arrived. If we alter the situation of any of the words, we shall presently be sensible of the melody suffering. This picture of the king's does not much resemble him. These pictures of the king were sent to him from Italy. He who committed the offence, thou should'st correct, not I, who am innocent.

* *Rule.* It is improper to use a neuter verb in the passive form. Thus, I am purposed—He is arrived—should be, I have purposed—He has arrived.

From this rule there are a number of exceptions; for it is allowable to say, He is come. She is gone, &c.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

But Thomas, one of the twelve, called Didymus, was not with them when Jesus came. I offer observations, that a long and chequered pilgrimage have enabled me to make on man. After I visited Europe, I returned to America. Clélia is a vain woman, whom, if we do not flatter, she will be disgusted. In his conduct was treachery, and in his words faithless professions. The orators did not forget to enlarge themselves on so popular a subject. He acted conformable with his instructions, and cannot be censured justly.

No person could speak stronger on this subject, nor behave nobler, than our young advocate, for the cause of toleration. They were studious to ingratiate with those who it was dishonourable to favour. The house framed a remonstrance, where they spoke with great freedom of the king's prerogative. Neither flatter or condemn the rich or the great. Many would exchange gladly their honours, beauty, and riches, for that more quiet and humbler station, which thou art now dissatisfied with. High hopes and florid views, is a great enemy to tranquillity. Many persons will not believe but what they are free from prejudice. I will lay me down in peace, and take my rest. This word I have only found in Spenser. The king being apprized of the conspiracy, he fled from Jerusalem.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

A too great variety of studies dissipate and weaken the mind. James was resolved to not indulge himself in such a cruel amusement. They admired the countryman's, as they called him, candour and uprightness. The pleasure or pain of one passion differ from those of another. The court of Spain, who gave the order, were not aware of the consequences. There was much spoke and wrote on each side of the question; but I have chose to suspend my decision.

Religion raises men above themselves; irreligion sinks them beneath the brutes; that binds them down to a poor pitiable speck of perishable earth; this opens for them a prospect to the skies. Temperance and exercise, howsoever little they may be regarded, they are the best means of preserving health. To despise others on account of their poverty, or to value ourselves for our wealth, are dispositions highly culpable. This task was the easier performed, from the cheerfulness with which he engaged in it. These counsels were the dictates of virtue, and the dictates of true honour. As his misfortunes were the fruit of his own obstinacy, a few persons pitied him. And they were judged every man according to their works. Riches is the bane of human happiness. I wrote to my brother before I received his letter.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

When Garrick appeared, Peter was for some time in doubt whether it could be him or not. Are you living contented in spiritual darkness? The company was very numerous. Shall the throne of iniquity have fellowship with thee, which frameth mischief by a law? Where is the security that evil habits will be ever broken? They each bring materials to the place. Nor let no comforter delight my ear. She was six years older than him. They were obliged to contribute more than us. The Bãrons had little more to rely on, besides the power of their families. The sewers (shõres) must be kept so clear, as the water may run away. Such among us who follow that profession. No body is so sanguine to hope for it. She behaved unkindler than I expected. Agreeable to your request I send this letter. She is exceeding fair. Thomas is not as docile as his sister. There was no other book but this. He died by a fever. Among whom was Mary Magdalene, and Mary the mother of James. My sister and I waited till they were called. The army were drawn up in haste. The public is respectfully informed, that, &c. The friends and amusements which he preferred corrupted his morals. Each must answer for themselves. Henry, though at first he showed an unwillingness, yet afterwards he granted his request



PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Him and her live very happily together. She invited Jane and I to see her new dress. She uttered such cries that pierced the heart of every one who heard them. Maria is not as clever as her sister Ann. Though he promises ever so solemnly, I will not believe him. The full moon was no sooner up, in all its brightness, but he opened to them the gate of paradise. It rendered the progress very slow of the new invention. This book is Thomas', that is James'. Socrates's wisdom has been the subject of many a conversation. Fare thee well, James. Who, who has the judgement of a man, would have drawn such an inference? George was the most diligent scholar whom I ever knew. I have observed some children to use deceit. He durst not to displease his master. The hopeless delinquents might, each in their turn, adopt the expostulatory language of Job. Several of our English words, some centuries ago, had different meanings to those they have now. And I was afraid, and went and hid thy talent in the earth; lo, there thou hast that is thine. With this booty, he made off to a distant part of the country, where he had reason to believe that neither he nor his master were known. Thine is the kingdom, the power, and the glory.* I have been at London.

* Rhetorically considered, "Thine is," &c., is an expression preferable to the ordinary grammatical construction, "Thine are."

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Which of the two masters, says Sēneca, shall we most esteem? He who strives to correct his scholars by prudent advice and motives of honour, or another who will lash them severely for not repeating their lessons as they ought! The blessing of the Lord it maketh rich, and he addeth no sorrow with it. For if there be first a willing mind, it is accepted according to that a man hath, and not according to that he hath not. If a brother or a sister be naked and destitute of daily food, and one of you say unto them, Depart in peace, be ye warmed and filled; notwithstanding if ye give them not those things which are needful to the body, what doth it profit?

But she always behaved with great severity to her maids; and if any of them were negligent of their duty, or made a slip in their conduct, nothing would serve her but burying the poor girls alive. He had no master to instruct him; he had read nothing but the writings of Moses and the prophets, and had received no lessons from the Socrates's,* the Plato's, and the Confucius's of the age. They that honour me, I will honour. For the poor always ye have with you.

* The Possessive case must not be used for the plural number. In this quotation from Baron Haller's Letters to his Daughter, the proper names should have been pluralized like common nouns; thus, From the Socrateses, the Platoes, and the Confuciuses of the age.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

The first Christians of the gentile world made a simple and entire transition from a state as bad, if not worse, than that of entire ignorance, to the Christianity of the New Testament.

And he said unto Gideon, every one that lappeth of the water with his tongue, as a dog lappeth, him shalt thou set by himself.

The duke had not behaved with that loyalty as was expected.

Milton seems to have been well acquainted with his own genius, and to know what it was that nature had bestowed upon him more bountifully than upon others.

And on the morrow, because he would have known the certainty wherefore he was accused* by the Jews, he loosed him from his bonds.

Here rages force, here tremble flight and fear,
Here stormed contention, and here fury frowned.

The Cretan javelin reached him from afar,
And pierced his shoulder as he mounts his car.

Nor is it then a welcome guest, affording only an uneasy sensation, and brings always with it a mixture of concern and compassion.

He only† promised me a loan of the book for two days. I was once thinking to have written a poem.

* *Accuse* requires *of* before the crime, and *by* before the person accusing.

† This sentence expresses one meaning as it stands. It may be made to express other four by placing *only* after *me*, or *loan*, or *book*, or *days*.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES

A very slow child will often be found to get lessons by heart as soon as, nay some times sooner, than one who is ten times as intelligent.

It is then from a cultivation of the perceptive faculties, that we only can attain those powers of conception which are essential to taste.

No man is fit for free conversation for the inquiry after truth, if he be exceedingly reserved; if he be haughty and proud of his knowledge; if he be positive and dogmatical in his opinions; if he be one who always affects to outshine all the company; if he be fretful and peevish; if he affect wit, and is full of puns, or quirks, or quibbles.

Conversation is the business, and let every one that please add their opinion freely.

The mean suspicious wretch whose bolted door
Ne'er moved in duty to the wandering poor;
With him I left the cup to teach his mind,
That heaven can bless if mortals will be kind.

There are many more shining qualities in the mind of man, but there is none so useful as discretion.

Mr. Locke having been introduced by Lord Shaftesbury to the Duke of Buckingham and Lord Halifax, these three noblemen, instead of conversing with the philosopher on literary subjects, in a very short time sat down to cards.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Bad Arrangement.

It is your light fantastic fools, who have neither heads nor hearts, in both sexes, who, by dressing their bodies out of all shape, render themselves ridiculous and contemptible.

And how can brethren hope to partake of their parent's blessing that curse each other.

The superiority of others over us, though in trivial concerns, never fails to mortify our vanity, and give us vexation, as Nicole admirably observes.

Likewise also the chief priests, mocking, said amongst themselves, with the scribes, He saved others; himself he cannot save.

Noah, for his godliness, and his family, were the only persons preserved from the flood.

It is an unanswerable argument of a very refined age, the wonderful civilities that have passed between the nation of authors, and that of readers.

And they said among themselves, who shall roll us away the stone from the door of the sepulchre? And when they had looked, they saw that the stone was rolled away: for it was very great.

A great stone that I happened to find, after a long search, by the sea-shore, served me for an anchor.

It is true what he says, but it is not applicable to the point.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

Bad Arrangement.*

The senate of Rome ordered that no part of it should be rebuilt; it was demolished to the ground, so that travellers are unable to say where Carthage stood at this day.

Thus ended the war with Antiochus, twelve years after the second Punic war; and two after it had been begun.

Upon the death of Claudius, the young Emperor, Nero, pronounced his funeral oration, and he was canonized among the gods, who scarcely deserved the name of a man.

Galérius abated much of his severities against the Christians on his death-bed, and revoked those edicts which he had formerly published, tending to their persecution, a little before his death.

The first care of Aurélius was to marry his daughter Lucilla once more to Claudius Pompeianus, a man of moderate fortune, &c.

But at length, having made his guards accomplices in their design, they set upon Maximin while he slept at noon in his tent, and slew both him and his son, whom he had made his partner in the empire, without any opposition.

Aurélian defeated the Marcomanni, a fierce and terrible nation of Germany, that had invaded Italy, in three several engagements.

* The exercises on this page are all extracted from the octavo edition of Goldsmith's Roman History, from which many more might be got. It is amazing how many mistakes even our most popular authors have made.

AMBIGUITY.

You suppose him younger than I.

This may mean, either that you suppose him younger than I *am*, or that you suppose him to be younger than I suppose *him* to be.

Parmenio had served with great fidelity, Philip, the father of Alexander, as well as himself, for whom he first opened the way into Asia.

Here we are apt to suppose the word *himself* refers to Parmenio, and means that he had not only served *Philip*, but he had served *himself* at the same time. This however is not the meaning of the passage. If we arrange it thus, the meaning will appear. "Parmenio had not only served Philip the father of Alexander with great fidelity, but he had served *Alexander himself*, and was the first that opened the way for him into Asia."

Belisarius was general of all the forces under the emperor Justinian the First, a man of rare valour.

Who was a man of rare valour? The emperor Justinian we should suppose, from the arrangement of the words; but this is not the case, for it was *Belisarius*. The sentence should have stood thus, "Belisarius, a man of rare valour, was general of all the forces under the emperor Justinian the First."

Lisias promised to his father never to abandon his friends.

Whether were they his own friends or his *father's* whom Lisias promised never to abandon? If *his own*, it should be, Lisias promised and said to his father, I will never abandon *my friends*. If his *father's*, it should be, Lisias promised and said to his father, I will never abandon *your* friends.

IMPROPER EXPRESSIONS.

Tautology, or the repetition of a thought or word already fully expressed, is improper.

EXAMPLES.

The † *latter end* of that man shall be peace.

Whenever I try to improve, † I *always* find I can do it.

I saw it *in here*—I saw it *here*.

He was † *in here* yesterday when I spoke to him.

Give me *both of them* books.—Give me *both those* books.*

They *both* met—They met.

I *never* fail to read, *whenever* I can get a book—*when*.

You must *return* † *back* immediately.

First of all I shall say my lesson. *First* I shall say, &c.

Before I do that, I must † *first* finish this.

He *plunged* † *down* into the water.

Read from *here* to *there*—from *this* place to *that*.

Lift † *up* your book. He mentioned it † *over* again.

This was the luckiest accident of *all* † *others*.

I ran after him a little way; but soon returned † *back* again.

I cannot tell † *for why* he did it.

Learn † *from hence* to study the Scriptures diligently.

Where shall I begin † *from* when I read.

We must do this *last* † *of* † *all*. Hence, † *therefore*, I say.

I found nobody † *else* but him there.

Smoke *ascends* † *up* into the clouds.

We hastily *descended* † *down* from the mountain.

He *raised* † *up* his arm to strike me.

We were † *mutually* friendly to *each other*.

It should † *ever* be your *constant* study to do good.

As soon as I awoke I *rose* † *up* and dressed myself.

I leave town in the † *latter end* of July.

✂ Avoid the following vulgar phrases:—Behoof, behest, fell to work, wherewithal, quoth he, do away, long winded, chalked out, pop out, must needs, got rid of, handed down, self-same, pell mell, that's your sort, tip him the wink, pitched upon.—*Subject matter* is a detestable phrase.

—*Subject*.

† The word immediately after the dagger is to be omitted, because it is superfluous.

* These, if the person has them in his hand.

IMPROPER EXPRESSIONS.

My every hope, <i>should be</i>	<i>All my hopes.</i>
Frequent opportunity.	Frequent <i>opportunities.</i>
Who finds him in money?	Who finds him money?
He put it in his pocket.	He put it <i>into</i> his pocket.
No less than fifty persons.	No <i>fewer</i> than fifty persons.
The two first steps are new.	The <i>first two</i> steps are new.
All over the country.	<i>Over all</i> the country.
Be that as it will.	Be that as it <i>may.</i>
About two years back.	About two years <i>ago.</i>
He was to come as this day.	He was to come this day.
They retreated back.	They retreated.
It lays on the table.	It <i>lies</i> on the table.
I turned them topsy turvy.	I <i>overset</i> them.
I catch'd it.	I <i>caught</i> it.
How does thee do?	How <i>dost thou</i> do?
Overseer over his house.	Overseer <i>of</i> his house.
Opposite the church.	Opposite <i>to</i> the church.
Provisions were plenty.	Provisions were <i>plentiful.</i>
A new pair of gloves.	A <i>pair of new</i> gloves.
A young beautiful woman.	A beautiful young woman.
Where do you come from?	<i>Whence</i> do you come?
Where are you going?	<i>Whither</i> are you going?
For such another fault.	For another such fault.
Of consequence.	Consequently.
Having not considered it.	Not having considered it.
I had rather not.	I <i>would</i> rather not.
I'd as lief.	I would as <i>soon.</i>
For good and all.	Totally and completely.
This here house, says I.	This house, <i>said</i> I.
Where is it? says I, to him.	Where is it? <i>said</i> I, to him.
I propose to visit them.	I <i>purpose</i> to visit them.
He spoke contemptibly of me.	He spoke <i>contemptuously</i> of me.
It is apparent.	It is <i>obvious.</i>
In its primary sense.	In its <i>primitive</i> sense.
I heard them <i>pro</i> and <i>con.</i>	I heard <i>both</i> sides.
I an't hungry.	I <i>am not</i> hungry.
I want a scissors.	I want a <i>pair of</i> scissors.
A new pair of shoes.	A <i>pair of new</i> shoes.
I saw him some ten years ago.	I <i>saw</i> him ten years ago.
I met in with him.	I <i>met with</i> him.
The subject matter.	The subject.
I add one more reason.	I add <i>one reason</i> <i>&c.</i>

Do y
His
The

They
It is
A le
He i
He k
The
Ther
He k
A m
You
Seve
He o
He o
An l
At t
If I
Hav
The
Are
Wer
Dire
He s
He
Tha
If I
You
He
He
Hav
I sh
I th
Will
The
Will
She
It is

IMPROPER EXPRESSIONS.

Do you mind how many chapters are in Job?—*remember.*
 His public character is undeniable—*unexceptionable.*
 The wool is cheaper;—but the cloth is as dear as ever—
 omit *the* in both places.
 They gained five shillings the piece by it—*a pike.*
 It is not worth a sixpence—*sixpence.*
 A letter conceived in the following words—*expressed.*
 He is much difficulted—*at a loss, puzzled.*
 He behaved in a very gentlemanly manner—*gentleman-like.*
 The poor boy was ill-guided—*ill-used.*
 There was a great many company—*much company.*
 He has been misfortunate—*unfortunate.*
 A momentous circumstance—*momentous.*
 You will some day repent it—*one day* repent of it.
 Several were of that opinion—*Several*, i. e. several persons
 He did it in an overly manner—*in a careless.*
 He does every thing pointedly—*exactly.*
 An honest like man—*A tall good-looking man.*
 At the expiry of his lease—*expiration.*
 If I had ever so much in my offer—*choice.*
 Have you any word to your brother?—*message.*
 The cock is a noisy beast—*fowl.*
 Are you acquaint with him?—*acquainted.*
 Were you crying on me?—*calling.*
 Direct your letters to me at Mr. B.'s, Edinburgh—*Address.*
 He and I never cast out—*never quarrel.*
 He took a fever—*was seized with a fever.*
 He was lost in the river—*drowned* (if the body was got.)
 That militates against your doctrine—*operates.*
 If I am not mistaken—*If I mistake not.*
 You may lay your account with opposition—*You may expect.*
 He proposes to buy an estate—*purposes.*
 He plead his own cause—*pleaded.*
 Have ye plenished your house?—*furnished.*
 I shall notice a few particulars—*mention.*
 I think much shame—*I am much ashamed.*
 Will I help you to a bit of beef?—*Shall.*
 They wared their money to advantage—*laid out.*
 Will we see you next week?—*Shall.*
 She thinks long to see him—*She longs* to see him.
 It is not much worth—*It is not worth much.*

IMPROPER EXPRESSIONS.

- Is he going to the school?—*to school.*
 He has got the cold—*a cold.*
 Say the grace—*Say grace.*
 I cannot go the day—*to-day.*
 A four square table—*A square table.*
 He is cripple—*lame.*
 Get my big coat—*great coat.*
 Hard fish—*Dried fish.*
 A novel fashion—*new.*
 He is too precipitant—*hasty.*
 Roasted cheese—*Toasted.*
 I dinna ken—*I don't know.*
 Sweet butter—*Fresh.*
 I have a sore head—*head-ache.*
 A stupendous work—*stupendous.*
 A tremendous work—*tremendous.*
 I got timous notice—*timely.*
 A summer's day—*summer day.*
 An oldish lady—*elderly.*
 A few broth—*Some.**
 I have nothing ado—*to do.*
 Ass milk—*Ass's.*
 Take a drink—*draught.*
 A pair of partridges—*A brace.*
 Six horse—*horses.*
 A milk cow—*milk.*
 Send me a swatch—*pattern.*
 He lays in bed till nine—*lies.*
 I mind none of them things—*those.*
 Give me them books—*these.*
 Close the door—*Shut.*
 Let him be—*alone.*
 Call for James—*on.*—p. 112, b.†
 Chap loud—*Knock.*
 I find no pain—*feel.*
 I mean to summons—*summon.*
 Will I help you?—*Shall.*
 Shall James come again?—*Will.*
 He has a timber leg—*a wooden.*
 I an't angry—*I am not.*
 That there house—*That house.*
- Go and pull berries—*gather.*
 Pull roses—*Pluck or gather.*
 To harry a neat—*rob.*
 He begins to make rich—*grows.*
 Mask the tea—*refuse.*
 I was maltreated—*ill used.*
 He wants much—*stammers.*
 I see'd him yesterday—*saw.*
 A house to let—*to be let.*—K. p. 86, b.
 Did you tell upon him?—*inform.*
 Come here—*hither.*
 A house to sell—*to be sold.*—K. p. 86.
 I knowed that—*knew.*
 That dress sets her—*becomes.*
 She turned sick—*grew.*
 He is turned tall—*grown.*
 This here boy—*This boy.* [same.
 It is equally the same—*It is the*
 It is split new—*quite.*
 That there man—*That man.*
 What pretty it is!—*How.*
 His is far neater—*much.*
 That's no possible—*not.*
 I shall go the morn—*to-morrow.*
 I asked at him—*asked him.*
 Is your papa in?—*within.*
 He was married on—*to.*
 Come in to the fire—*nearer.*
 Take out your glass—*off.*
 I find no fault to him—*in.*
 Cheese and bread—*Bread and*
cheese.
 Milk and bread—*Bread and milk.*
 Take tent—*Take care.*
 Come, say away—*Come, proceed.*
 Do bidding—*Be obedient.*
 He is a widow—*widower.*
 He stops there—*stays, dwells,*
lodges.
 Shall they return soon?—*Will.*
 Will we go home now?—*Shall.*
 He misguides his book—*abuses.*
 He don't do it well—*does not.*

* Broth is always singular—Powdered beef is beef sprinkled with salt, to preserve it for a few days. Salt beef is beef properly seasoned with salt.

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

ADDITIONAL REMARKS UNDER THE 4TH RULE
OF SYNTAX.

1: When *and* is understood, the verb must be plural; as, Wisdom, happiness, (and) virtue, *dwell* with the golden mediocrity.

Some think, that when two singular nouns, coupled with *and*, are nearly the same in meaning, the verb may be singular; as, Tranquillity and peace *dwells* there. Ignorance and negligence *has* produced this effect. This, however, is improper; for *tranquillity* and *peace* are *two* nouns or names and two make a *plural*; therefore the *verb* should be plural.

2. Two or more singular nouns coupled with *and*, require a verb in the *singular* number; when they denote only *one* person or thing; as, That able scholar and critic *has* been eminently useful.

3. Many writers use a *plural noun* after the 2d of two numerical adjectives; thus, The first and second *pages* are torn. This I think improper; it should rather be, The first and second *page*, i. e. the first *page* and the second *page* are torn:—*are*, perhaps; because independently of *and*, they are *both* in a torn state.—*Generation, hour, and ward* are singular in Exodus xx. 5, Matt. xx. 5, Acts xii. 10.

AND AND NOT.

4. When *not* is joined to *and*, the negative clause forms a parenthesis, and does not affect the construction of the other clause or clauses; therefore, the verb in the following and similar sentences should be singular. Genuine piety, and not great riches, *makes* a death-bed easy; i. e. Genuine piety

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

makes a death-bed easy, and great riches do not *make* it easy. Her prudence, not her possessions, *renders* her an object of desire.

EVERY, AND.

5. When the nouns coupled with *and* are qualified by the distributive *every*, the verb should be *singular*; as, Every man and woman *was* astonished at her fortitude. Every boy and girl *was* taught to read.—See Rule 27th.

WITH AND AND.

6. When a *singular* noun has a clause joined to it by *with*, it is often difficult to determine whether the *verb* should be *singular* or *plural*, especially as our most reputable authors use sometimes the one and sometimes the other; for example; some would say, My uncle, with his son, *was* in town yesterday. Others would say, My uncle, with his son, *were* in town yesterday.

If we take the *sense* for our guide, and nothing else can guide us in a case of this kind, it is evident that the verb should be *plural*; for both *uncle* and *son* are the *joint* subjects of our affirmation, and declared to be both in the *same* state.

When we perceive from the sense, that the noun *before With* is *exclusively* the real subject, then the verb should be *singular*; thus, *Christ*, with his three chosen disciples, *was* transfigured on the mount. Here the verb is singular, because we know that none but Christ was transfigured; the disciples were not *joint* associates with him; they were mere spectators. There seems to be an ellipsis in such sentences as this, which, if supplied in the present would run thus: Christ, (who

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

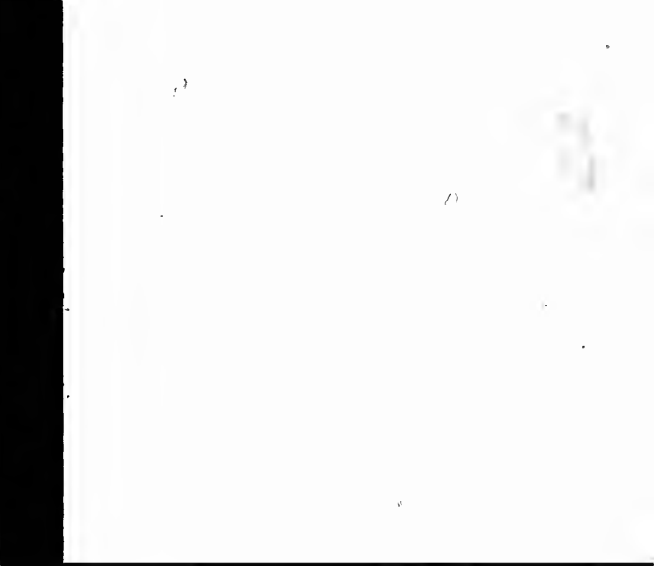
was attended^d with his three chosen disciples, was transfigured on the mount.

Mr. Murray, however, thinks that the verb should be *singular* in the following and similar sentences. "Prosperity, with humility, *renders its* possessors truly amiable." "The side A, with the sides B and C, *composes* the triangle." In my opinion, on the contrary, the verb should be *plural*. For, in the first sentence, it is not asserted that prosperity *alone* renders its possessor truly amiable, but prosperity and humility *united*, and co-operating to produce an effect in their *joint* state, which they were incapable of achieving in their *individual* capacity.

If true, as Mr. Murray says, that "the side A," in the second sentence, is the *true* nominative to the verb, then it follows, of course, that the two sides, B and C, have no agency or share in forming the triangle, and consequently that the side A *alone* composes the triangle. It is obvious, however, that *one* side cannot form a triangle or three-sided figure, and that the sides B and C are as much concerned in forming the triangle as the side A, and therefore the verb should be *plural*.

Upon the whole, we may venture to give the two following general rules.

1. That wherever the noun or pronoun *after With* exists, acts, or suffers *jointly* with the singular nominative *before* it, the verb should be *plural*; as, "She with her sisters *are* well." "His purse, with its contents, *were* abstracted from his pocket." "The general with his men *were* taken prisoners." In these sentences the verb is *plural*, because the words *after With* are as much the



MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

subject of discourse as the words before it,—her *sisters* were *well* as well as she; the *contents*, as well as the *purse*, were abstracted; and the *men*, as well as the general, were taken prisoners. If, in the first example, we say,—*is well*, then the meaning will be, she is well when in *company* with her sisters; and the idea that her *sisters* are *well*, will be entirely *excluded*.

2. When the noun after *with* is a mere involuntary or inanimate *instrument*, the verb should be *singular*; as, The Captain *with* his men *catches* poor Africans and *sells* them for slaves. The Squire *with* his hounds *kills* a fox. Here the verb is *singular*, because the men and hounds are not *joint* agents with the Captain and Squire; they are as much the mere instruments in their hands as the *gun* and *pen* in the hands of He and She in the following sentences. He *with* his gun *shoots* a hare. She *with* her pen *writes* a letter.

Of the Articles with several Adjectives.

A or *the* is prefixed only to the first of several adjectives qualifying one noun; as, A meek and holy man: but the article should be repeated, before each adjective, when each adjective relates to a generic word applicable to every one of the adjectives. For example, "The black and white cows were sold yesterday; the red will be sold tomorrow."

Here cows is the *generic* word, applicable to each of the adjectives, *black*, *white*, and *red*, but for want of *the* before *white*, we are led to suppose that the *black* and *white* cows mean only *one* sort, which are speckled with spots of black and white; and if this is our meaning, the sentence

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

is right; but if we mean *two* different sorts, the one all black, and the other all white, we should insert the article before both; and say, *The* black and *the* white cows, *i. e.* The black cows and the white cows were sold.

Some think this distinction of little importance; and it is really seldom attended to even by good writers; but in some cases it is necessary; although in others there cannot, from the nature of the thing, be any mistake. In the following sentences, for instance, the repetition of *the* before *horned* is not *necessary*, although it would be proper. "The *bald* and *horned* cows were sold last week." Here there can be no mistake, *two* sorts were sold; for a cow cannot be bald and horned too.

The same remark may be made respecting the *Demonstrative* pronouns that has been made respecting the *articles*; as, "*That* great and good man," means only *one* man: but *that* great and *that* good man would mean *two* men; the *one* a *great* man, the other a *good*.

THEY—THOSE

They stands for a noun already introduced, and should never be used till the noun be mentioned. *Those*, on the contrary, points out a noun not previously introduced, but generally understood. It is improper therefore to say, *They* who tell lies are never esteemed. *They* that are truly good must be happy. We should say, *Those* who tell lies, and *those* that are truly good; because we are *pointing out* a particular class of persons, and not referring to nouns previously introduced. A

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

noun when not expressed after *this*, *that*, *these*, and *those*, is always understood.

ANOTHER—ONE—EVERY.

Another corresponds to *one*; but not to *some* nor to *every*. Thus, "Handed down from *every* writer of verses to *another*." Should be, "from one writer of verses to another." "At *some* hour or *another*," should be, "At *some* hour or *other*."

One is often used in familiar phrases, (like *on* in French) for "we or any one of us indiscriminately; thus, *One* is often more influenced by example than by precept. The verb and pronoun with which *one* agrees should be *singular*. Thus, If *one* take a wrong method at first, it will lead *them* astray: should be, it will lead *one* astray, or, it will lead *him* astray.

THAT AND THOSE.

It is improper to apply *that* and *those* to things *present* or *just mentioned*. Thus, "They cannot be separated from the subject which follows; and for *that* reason," &c.; should be, and for *this* reason, &c. "Those sentences which we have at present before us;" should be, *These*, or, *The* sentences which we have, &c.

AS FOLLOWS, AS APPEARS.

As is often used as a Personal or Relative pronoun, and in both *numbers*, and in these cases it should be construed as a pronoun: as, "His words were *as follow*," that is, His words were *those which* follow. Here *as* is *plural*, because *words*, its antecedent, is plural. His description was *as follows*. Here *as* is *singular*, because *description*, its antecedent, is singular; that is, His description was *this which* follows.

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

This account of *as*, though in unison with Dr. Crombie's, is at variance with that of Dr. Campbell, and Mr. Murray. They explain the following sentences thus: "The arguments advanced were nearly *as follows*;" "The positions were *as appears* incontrovertible." That is, say they, "*as it follows*," "*as it appears*." What *it*? The *thing*. What *thing*?—*It*, or *thing*, cannot relate to *arguments*, for arguments is *plural*, and must have a *plural* pronoun and verb. Take the ordinary method of finding out the nominative to a verb, by asking a question with the verb, and the true nominative will be the answer: Thus, What follows? and the answer is, The *arguments follow*. It must be obvious, then, that *it* cannot be substituted for *arguments*, and that *as* is equal to *those which*, and that the verb is not *impersonal*, but the *third person plural*, agreeing with its nominative *which*, the last half of *as*. In the second example, *as appears* is a mere parenthesis, and does not relate to *positions* at all; but still the *as* is a pronoun. Thus, The positions, *it appears*, were incontrovertible.

They say, however, if we use *such* before *as*, the verb is no longer *impersonal*, but agrees with its nominative in the *plural* number; as, "The arguments advanced were nearly *such as follow*." "The positions were *such as appear* incontrovertible." This is, if possible, a greater mistake than the former; for what has *such* to do with the following *verb*? *Such* means *of that kind*, and expresses the quality of the *noun* repeated, but it has nothing to do with the verb at all. Therefore the construction must be the same with *such* that it is with *as*, with this difference in

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS

meaning, that when *such as* is used, we mean of *that kind* which follows.

When we say, "His arguments are as *follow*," we mean *those* arguments which follow are *verbatim* the very *same* that he used; but when we say, "His arguments were *such as follow*," we convey the idea, that the arguments which follow are *not* the very *same* that he used; but that they are only of the *same nature or kind*.

Their position, however, that the verb should be plural, can be made out by a circumlocution; thus: "His arguments were nearly *such* arguments as those which follow are:" but this very solution would show the error into which they have fallen in such phrases as, *as follows*, *as appears*, for they will not admit of similar solutions. We cannot say, "His arguments are nearly as the arguments which *follows is*."*

THIS MEANS, &c.

The word *means* in the singular number, and the phrases, *By this means*, *By that means*, are used by our best and most correct writers, when they denote instrumentality; as, *By means of death, &c.* *By that means* he preserves his superiority.—*Addison*.

Good writers use the noun *mean* in the singular number, only to denote *mediocrity*, *middle state*, &c., as, This is a *mean* between the two extremes.

This means and *that means*, should be used only when they refer to what is singular; *these*

* Addison and Steels have used a plural verb where the antecedent is plural. See Tattler, No. 62, 104.—Spect. No. 913.—Dr. Cassan, in his Philosophy of Rhetoric, vol. II. p. 7, has mistaken the construction of these phrases.

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

means and *those means*, when they respect plurals; as, He lived temperately, and by this *means* preserved his health. The scholars were attentive, industrious, and obedient to their tutors; and by *these means* acquired knowledge.

AMENDS.

Amends is used in the same manner as *means*; as, Peace of mind is *an* honourable *amends* for the sacrifices of interest. In return, he received the thanks of his employers, and the present of a large estate: *these* were ample *amends* for all his labours.

INTO, IN.

Into is used after a verb of motion: and *in*, when motion or rest *in* a place is signified; as, They cast him *into* a pit; I walk *in* the park.

SO AND SUCH.

When we refer to the *species* or *nature* of a thing, the word *such* is properly applied; as, *Such* a temper is seldom found; but when *degree* is signified, we use the word *so*; as, *So* bad a temper is seldom found.

DISAPPOINTED OF, DISAPPOINTED IN.

We are disappointed *of* a thing, when we do not get it, and disappointed *in* it when we have it, and find that it does not answer our expectations; as, We are often disappointed *in* things, which, before possession, promised much enjoyment. I have frequently desired their company, but have hitherto been disappointed *of* that pleasure.

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

TASTE OF, AND TASTE FOR.

A taste *of* a thing, implies actual enjoyment of it; but a taste *for* it, implies only a capacity for enjoyment; as, When we have had a true taste *of* the pleasures of virtue, we can have no relish *for* those of vice. He had a taste *for* such studies, and pursued them earnestly.

THE NOMINATIVE AND THE VERB.

When the nominative case has no personal tense of a verb, but is put before a participle, independent of the rest of the sentence, it is called the *case absolute*; as, *Shame* being lost, all virtue is lost; *him* destroyed; *him* descending; *him* only excepted; — *him*, in all these places, should be *he*.

Every *verb*, except in the infinitive mood or the participle, ought to have a *nominative case*, either expressed or implied; as, *Arise*, let us go hence; that is, *Arise ye*.

Every *nominative case* should belong to some *verb*, either expressed or implied; as, To whom thus *Adam*, i. e. *spoke*. In the following sentence, the word *virtue* is left by itself, without any verb with which it might agree. "Virtue, however it may be neglected for a time, men are so constituted, as ultimately to acknowledge and respect genuine merit:" it should be, However *much virtue may* be neglected, &c. The sentence may be made more elegant by altering the arrangement of the words: thus, Such is the constitution of men, *that virtue, however much it may be neglected for a time, will ultimately be acknowledged and respected.*—See *Rule LIX.*

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

The nominative is commonly placed *before* the verb; but it is sometimes put *after* it, or between the auxiliary and the verb.—See Parsing, N^o. e.

Them is sometimes improperly used instead of *these* or *those*; as, Give me *them* books, for *those* books, or *these* books.

What is sometimes improperly used for *that*; as, They will never believe but *what* I have been to blame; it should be—but *that* I have been, &c.

Which is often improperly used for *that*; thus, After *which* time, should be, After *that* time.

Which is applied to *collective* nouns composed of men; as, The court of Spain *which*; the company *which*, &c.

Which, and not *who*, should be used after the name of a person used merely as a *word*; as, The court of Queen Elizabeth, *who* was but another name for prudence and economy; it should be, *which* was but another, or, *whose name was*, &c.

It is and *it was* are often used in plural construction; as, *It is* they that are the real authors. *It was* the heretics that first began to rail, &c.—*They* are the real authors. The *heretics* first began, &c., would perhaps be more elegant.

The neuter pronoun *it* is frequently joined to a noun, or pronoun of the masculine or feminine gender; as, *It was I*; *It was the man*.

Adjectives, in many cases, should not be separated from their nouns, even by words which modify their meaning; thus, A large enough number; A distinct enough manner; should be, A number large enough; A manner distinct enough. The *adjective* is frequently placed *after* the noun which it qualifies; as, Goodness *divine*; Alexander the *Great*.

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

All is sometimes emphatically put after a number of particulars comprehended under it; as, Ambition, interest, honour, *all* these concurred.

Never generally precedes the verb; as, I *never* saw him: but when an auxiliary is used, *never* may be placed either between it and the verb, or before both; as, he *was never* seen, or, He *never* was seen.

The *present participle* is frequently introduced without any obvious reference to any *noun* or *pronoun*; as, Generally *speaking*, he behaves well. *Granting* his story to be true, &c. A pronoun is perhaps understood; as, *We* speaking, *We* granting.

Sometimes a *neuter* verb governs an objective, when the noun is of the same import with the verb; thus, to dream a *dream*; to run a *race*. Sometimes the noun after a *neuter* verb is governed by a preposition understood; as, He lay six hours in bed, i. e. *during* six hours.

The same verbs are sometimes used as *active*, and sometimes as *neuter*, according to the sense; thus, *Think*, in the phrase, "*Think* on me," is a *neuter* verb; but it is active in the phrase, "*Charity thinketh* no evil."

It is improper to change the form of the second and third person singular of the auxiliaries in the *compound tenses* of the subjunctive mood; thus, If thou *have* done thy duty. Unless he *have* brought money. If thou *had* studied more diligently. Unless thou *shall* go to-day. If thou *will* grant my request, &c., should be, If thou *hadst* done thy duty. Unless he *has* brought. If thou *hadst* studied. Unless thou *shalt* go, &c.

I
in
thus
sub
If t
T
ture
I
it.
Tho
be f
mig

1
piec
2
to a
3
plac
4
writ
5
6
Hig
7
plac
8
a c
"K
9
gen

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS.

It is improper to vary the second person singular in the *past* subjunctive, (except the verb *to be*;) thus, If thou *came* not in time, &c. If thou *didst* not submit, &c, should be; If thou *camest* not in time: If thou *didst* not submit, &c.

The following phrases, selected from the Scriptures, are strictly grammatical.

If thou *knewest* the gift. If thou *didst* receive it. If thou *hadst* known. If thou *wilt* save Israel Though he *hath* escaped the sea. That thou *mayst* be feared. We also properly say, If thou *mayst*, *mightst*, *couldst*, *wouldst*, or *shouldst* love.

OF CAPITALS.

1. The first word of every book, or any other piece of writing, must begin with a capital letter.
2. The first word after a period, and the answer to a question, must begin, &c.
3. Proper names, that is, names of persons, places, ships, &c.
4. The pronoun *I*, and the interjection *O*, are written in capitals.
5. The first word of every line in poetry.
6. The appellations of the Deity; as, God, Most High, &c.
7. Adjectives derived from the proper names of places; as, Grecian, Roman, English, &c.
8. The first word of a quotation, introduced after a colon; as, Always remember this ancient maxim: "*Know thyself.*"
9. Common nouns when personified; as, Come, gentle *Spring*.

DIRECTIONS FOR SUPERSCRPTIONS, AND FORMS OF ADDRESS TO PERSONS OF EVERY RANK.*

To the King's Most Excellent Majesty, — *Sire*, or *May it please Your Majesty*. — Conclude a petition or speech with, *Your Majesty's most Loyal and Dutiful Subject*.

To the Queen's Most Excellent Majesty, — *Madam*, or *May it please Your Majesty*.

To his Royal Highness, Frederick, Duke of York, — *May it please Your Royal Highness*.

To His Royal Highness the Duke of Kent, — *May it please your Royal Highness*.

in the same manner address every other of the Royal Family, *male or female*.

NOBILITY. — To his Grace the Duke of —, † — *My Lord Duke, Your Grace*, or *May it please Your Grace*.

To the Most Noble the Marquis of —, — *My Lord Marquis, Your Lordship*.

To the Right Honourable — Earl of —, — *My Lord, Your Lordship*.

To the Right Honourable Lord Viscount —, — *My Lord, Your Lordship*.

To the Right Honourable Baron —, — *My Lord, May it please Your Lordship*.

The wives of Noblemen have the same titles with their husbands, thus:

To her Grace the Duchess of —, — *May it please your Grace*.

To the Right Honourable Lady Ann Rose, — *My Lady, May it please Your Ladyship*.

The titles of *Lord* and *Right Honourable* are given to all the sons of *Dukes* and *Marquises*, and to the eldest sons of *Earls*; and the title of *Lady* and *Right Honourable* to all their daughters. The *younger* sons of *Earls* are all *Honourable* and *Esquires*.

* The superscription, or what is put on the outside of a letter, is printed in Roman characters, and begins with *To*. The terms of address used either in beginning a letter, a petition, or verbal address are printed in *Italic* letters immediately after the superscription.

† The blanks are to be filled up with the real name and title.

Sight
and
our
You
bur
of t
ers
tion
The K
our
Kin
asse
The l
our
Un
lian
Ho
The s
and
dre
The l
any
the
Bo
Li
All N
the
of
tai
Hono
Ea
ern
The t
ten
Li
of
To h
ty
Co
Ea

FORMS OF ADDRESS.

Right Honourable is due to Earls, Viscounts, and Barons, and to all the members of Her Majesty's Most* Honourable Privy Council—To the Lord Mayor of *London, York, and Dublin*, and to the Lord Provost of *Edinburgh*, during the time they are in *office*—To the Speaker of the House of Commons—To the Lords Commissioners of the Treasury, Admiralty, Trade, and Plantations, &c.

The House of Peers is addressed thus, To the Right Honourable the Lords Spiritual and Temporal of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland in Parliament assembled.—*My Lords, May it please your Lordships.*

The House of Commons is addressed thus, To the Honourable the Knights, Citizens, and Burgesses of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland in Parliament assembled, — *Gentlemen, May it please your Honours.*

The sons of Viscounts and Barons are styled Honourable and Esquires; and their daughters have their letters addressed thus, To the Honourable Miss or Mrs. D. B.

The king's commission confers the title of Honourable on any gentleman in a place of honour or trust; such as the Commissioners of Excise, Her Majesty's Customs, Board of Control, &c.—Admirals of the Navy—Generals, Lieutenant-Generals, and Colonels in the Army.

All Noblemen, or men of title in the Army or Navy, use their title by *right*, such as *honourable*, before their title of *rank*; such as *captains*, &c., thus, *The Honourable Captain, James James of the — — Sir, Your Honour.*

Honourable is due also to the Court of Directors of the East India Company—the Governors and Deputy Governors of the Bank of England.

The title *Excellency* is given to all Ambassadors, Plenipotentiaries, Governors in foreign countries, to the Lord Lieutenant, and to the Lords Justices of the Kingdom of Ireland.—Address such thus:

To his Excellency Sir ——— Bart. Her Britannic Majesty's Envoy Extraordinary, and Plenipotentiary to the Court of Rome, — *Your Excellency, May it please your Excellency.*

* The Privy Counsellors, taken collectively, are styled Her Majesty's Most Honourable Privy Council.

FORMS OF ADDRESS.

The title, *Right Worshipful*, is given to the Sheriffs, Aldermen, and Recorder of London; and *Worshipful* to the Aldermen and Recorders of other Corporations, and to Justices of the Peace in England.—*Sir, Your Worship*.

The Clergy are all styled *Reverend*, except the Archbishops and Bishops, who have something additional; thus,—

To his Grace the Archbishop of Canterbury; or, To the *Most Reverend Father* in God, Charles, Lord Archbishop of Canterbury,—*My Lord, Your Grace*.

To the *Right Reverend Father* in God, John, Lord Bishop of ———, *My Lord, Your Lordship*.

To the very Rev. Dr. A. B., Dean of ———, *Sir*, To the Rev. Mr. Desk; or, to the Rev. John Desk.*

The general address to Clergymen is, *Sir*, and when written to, *Reverend Sir*.—*Deans* and *Archdeacons* are usually styled *Very Reverend*, and called *Mr. Dean*, *Mr. Archdeacon*.

Address the Principal of the University of Edinburgh, thus; To the Very Rev. Dr. B., Principal of the University of Edinburgh,—*Doctor*: when written to, *Very Rev. Doctor*. The other Professors thus; To Dr. D. R., Professor of Logic in the University of E.—*Doctor*. If a Clergyman, say, To the Rev. Dr. J. M., Professor of, &c.—*Reverend Doctor*.

Those who are not *Drs.* are styled *Esquire*, but not *Mr.* too: thus, To J. P., Esq., Professor of Humanity in the University of Edinburgh,—*Sir*. If he has a literary title, it may be added: thus, To J. P., Esq., A. M., Professor of, &c.

Magistrates, Barristers at Law or Advocates, and Members of Parliament, viz. of the House of Commons, (these last have *M.P.* after *Esq.*), and all gentlemen in independent circumstances, are styled *Esquire*, and their wives *Mrs.*

* It seems to be unsettled whether *Mr.* should be used after *Reverend* or not. In my opinion it should; because it gives a clergyman his own honorary title over and above the common one. May we not use the *Rev. Mr.* as well as the *Rev. Dr.*? Besides, we do not always recollect whether his name is *James* or *John*, &c. *Mr.*, in such a case, would look better on the back of a letter than a long ill-drawn dash, thus, *The Rev. ——— Desk*. In short, *Mr.* is used by our best writers after *Reverend*, but not uniformly. The words *To the*, not being necessary on the back of a letter, are seldom used; but in addressing it in the inside, left hand corner, at the bottom, they are generally used. In addressing bills they are necessary.

Pu
compe
rally
and a

A s
etop at
the he

The
are se
temn
men t
great

The
the re
give m
I than
for yo

Tw
nouns
not ad
with a
She is
elevat
she be
ly. V
is inse
man.

PUNCTUATION.

PUNCTUATION is the art of pointing written composition in such a manner as may naturally lead to its proper meaning, construction, and delivery.

OF THE COMMA.

RULE I.

A simple sentence in general requires only a full stop at the end; as, True politeness has its seat in the heart.

RULE II.

The simple members of a compound sentence are separated by a comma; as, Crafty men condemn studies, simple men admire them, and wise men use them. He studies diligently, and makes great progress.

RULE III.

The persons in a direct address are separated from the rest of the sentence by commas; as, *My son*, give me thine heart. *Colonel*, your most obedient. I thank you, *sir*. I am obliged to you, *my friends*, for your kindness.

RULE IV.

Two words of the same part of speech, whether nouns, adjectives, verbs, participles, or adverbs, do not admit of a comma between them, when coupled with a conjunction; as, James *and* John are good. She is wise *and* virtuous. Religion expands *and* elevates the mind. By being admired *and* flattered, she became vain. Cicero spoke forcibly *and* fluently. When the conjunction is suppressed, a comma is inserted in its place; as, He was a plain, honest man.

OF THE COMMA.

RULE V.

Three or more nouns, adjectives, verbs, participles, or adverbs, are separated by commas; as, The sun, the moon, and the stars, are the glory of nature.

When words follow in *pairs*, there is a comma between each *pair*; as, Truth is fair and artless, simple and sincere, uniform and constant.

RULE VI.

All phrases or explanatory sentences, whether in the beginning, middle, or end of a simple sentence, are separated from it by commas; as, To confess the truth, I was in fault. His father dying, he succeeded to the estate. The king approving the plan, put it into execution. Paul, the apostle of the Gentiles, was eminent for his zeal and knowledge. George the Third, King of Great Britain. I have seen the emperor, as he was called. In short, he was a great man.

RULE VII.

The verb *to be*, followed by an adjective, or an infinitive with adjuncts, is generally preceded by a comma; as, To be diligently employed in the performance of real duty, is honourable. One of the noblest of the Christian virtues, is to love our enemies.*

RULE VIII.

A comma is used between the two parts of a sentence that has its natural order inverted; as, Him that is weak in the faith, receive ye.

* Some insert a comma both *before* and *after* the verb *to be* when it is near the middle of a long sentence, because the *pronunciation* requires it; but that is a bad reason; for pauses and points are often at variance.

AN
tion
rher
do g

Re
in so
W
and
in ot
sex,
labou
first
ornam
rous
kind

A
stood
in su
much
A m
a gre
he is
A
mem
tives
than
days,

* Th
to pro

OF THE COMMA.

RULE IX.

Any remarkable expression resembling a quotation or a command, is preceded by a comma; as, There is much truth in the proverb, *Without pains no gains.* I say unto all, *Watch.*

RULE X.

Relative pronouns admit of a comma before them in some cases, and in some not.

When several words come between the relative and its antecedent,* a comma is inserted; but not in other cases; as, There is no *charm* in the female sex, *which* can supply the place of virtue. It is labour only, *which* gives the relish to pleasure. The first *beauty* of style is propriety, *without which* all ornament is puerile and superfluous. It is barbarous to injure those, *from whom* we have received a kindness.

RULE XI.

A comma is often inserted where a verb is *understood*, and particularly before *not*, *but*, and *though*, in such cases as the following: John has acquired much knowledge; his brother, (has acquired) little. A man ought to obey reason, *not* appetite. He was a great poet, *but* a bad man. The sun is up, *though* he is not visible.

A comma is sometimes inserted between the two members of a *long* sentence connected by comparatives; as, Better is little with the fear of the Lord, than great treasure and trouble therewith. As thy days, so shall thy strength be.

* This is when the relative clause is merely *explanatory*, the relative is preceded by a comma.

OF THE COMMA.

RULE XII.

It has been stated, in Rule VI., that explanatory words and phrases, such as *perfectly, indeed, doubtless, formerly, in fine, &c.*, should be separated from the context by a comma.

Many adverbs, however, and even phrases, when they are considered of little importance, should not be separated from the rest of the sentence by commas; as, Be ye *therefore* perfect. *Peradventure* test shall be found there. All things *indeed* are pure. *Doubtless* thou art our father. They were *formerly* very studious. He was *at last* convinced of his error. Be not ye *therefore* partakers with them. *Nevertheless* the poor man's wisdom is despised. Anger is *in a manner* like madness. *At length* some pity warmed the master's breast.

These twelve rules respecting the position of the *comma*, include everything, it is presumed, to be found in the more numerous rules of larger volumes. But it is impossible to make them perfect. For, "In many instances, the employment or omission of a comma, depends upon the length or the shortness of a clause; the presence or absence of adjuncts; the importance or non-importance of the sentiment. Indeed, with respect to punctuation, the practice of the best writers is extremely arbitrary; many omitting some of the usual commas, when no error in sense, or in construction, is likely to arise from the omission. Good sense and attentive observation are more likely to regulate this subject than any mechanical directions.

The best general rule is, to point in such a manner as to make the sense evident.

No exercises have been subjoined to the Rules on punctuation: because none can be given equal to those the pupil can prescribe for

T
of s
thos
S
pen
som
vens
pen
pen

A
so is
ing
over
the
He
he t
Phil
oper
reser
sive
to m
idea.

Th
rate
occu
the p
nity
suppo

In ev
note;
which
almx.

Th
sente

OF THE SEMICOLON.

The semicolon is used to separate two members of a sentence less dependent on each other than those separated by the comma.

Sometimes the two members have a mutual dependence on one another, both in sense and syntax; sometimes the preceding member makes complete sense of itself, and only the following one is dependent; and sometimes both seem to be independent.

EXAMPLES.

As coals are to burning coals, and wood to fire; so is a contentious man to kindle strife As a roaring lion and a raging bear; so is a wicked ruler over the poor people. Mercy and truth preserve the king; and his throne is upheld by mercy. He that loveth pleasure shall be a poor man; he that loveth wine and oil shall not be rich. Philosophy asserts, that Nature is unlimited in her operations; that she has inexhaustible stores in reserve; that knowledge will always be progressive; and that all future generations will continue to make discoveries, of which we have not the least idea.

The semicolon is sometimes employed to separate simple members in which even no commas occur: thus, The pride of wealth is contemptible; the pride of learning is pitiable; the pride of dignity is ridiculous; and the pride of bigotry is insupportable.

In every one of these members the construction and sense are complete; and a period might have been used instead of the semicolon; which is preferred merely because the sentences are short and form a climax.

OF THE COLON.

The colon is used when the preceding part of the sentence is complete in sense and construction; and

the following part is some remark naturally arising from it, and depending on it in sense, though not in construction; as, Study to acquire the habit of thinking: no study is more important.

A colon is generally used before an example or a quotation; as, The Scriptures gave us an amiable representation of the Deity in these words: God is love. He was often heard to say: I have done with the world, and I am willing to leave it.

A colon is generally used where the sense is complete in the first clause, and the next begins with a conjunction *understood*; as, Do not flatter yourselves with the hope of perfect happiness. there is no such thing in the world. Had the conjunction *for* been expressed, a semicolon would have been used; thus, Do not flatter yourselves with the hope of perfect happiness; *for* there is no such thing in the world.

The *colon* is generally used when the conjunction is *understood*; and the *semicolon*, when the conjunction is *expressed*.

NOTE. This observation has not always been attended to in pointing the Psalms and some parts of the Liturgy. In them, a colon is often used merely to divide the verse, it would seem, into two parts, to suit a particular species of church-music called *chanting*; as, "My tongue is the pen: of a ready-writer." In reading, a cesural pause, in such a place as this, is enough. In the Psalms, and often in the Proverbs, the colon must be read like a semicolon, or even like a comma, according to the sense.

OF THE PERIOD.

When a sentence is complete in construction and sense, it is marked with a period; as, Jesus wept.

A period is sometimes admitted between sentences connected with such words as *but*, *and*, *for*, *therefore*, *hence*, &c. Example: And he arose and came to his father. *But* when he was yet a great way off, &c.

All abbreviations end with a *period*; as, A. D.

OF
Inter
Adm
su
Pare
in
inn
Apos
for
Care
or
Hyp
ret
als
Secti
po
Para
sul
Crot
sex
pla
del
Quote
the
Index
Brac
Ellip
K-
Acute
gra
Breve
& l
Dia
ble
Aster
vati
not

lett
Dash
pau
the
tion

OF OTHER CHARACTERS USED IN COMPOSITION.

Interrogation (?) is used when a question is asked.

Admiration (!) or *Exclamation*, is used to express any sudden emotion of the mind.

Parenthesis () is used to enclose some necessary remarks in the body of another sentence; *commas* are now used instead of *Parentheses*.

Apostrophe (') is used in place of a letter left out; as *lov'd* for *loved*.

Caret (^) is used to show that some word is either omitted or interlined.

Hyphen (-) is used at the *end of a line*, to show that the rest of the word is at the beginning of the next line. It also connects compound words; as, *Tea-pot*.

Section (§) is used to divide a discourse or chapter into portions.

Paragraph (¶) is used to denote the beginning of a new subject.

Crotchets [], or *Brackets*, are used to enclose a word or sentence which is to be explained in a note, or the explanation itself, or to correct a mistake, or supply some deficiency.

Quotation (" ") is used to show that a passage is quoted in the author's words.

Index (~~☞~~) is used to point out anything remarkable.

Brace } is used to connect words which have one common term, or three lines in poetry, having the same rhyme, called a triplet.

Ellipsis (—) is used when some letters are omitted; as, K—g for King.

Acute accent (') is used to denote a *short-syllable*; the *grave* (`) a *long*.

Breve (˘) marks a *short vowel* or syllable, and the *dash* (-) a *long*.

Diaeresis (¨) is used to divide a diphthong into two syllables; as, aerial.

Asterisk (*)—*Obelisk* (†)—*Double dagger* (‡)—and *Parallels* (||) with *small letters* and *figures*, refer to some note on the *margin*, or at the *bottom of the page*.

(**) Two or three asterisks denote the omission of some letters in some bold or indelicate expression.

Dash (—) is used to denote *abruptness*—a significant pause—an unexpected turn in the sentiment—or that the *first clause is common to all the rest*, as in *this definition of a dash*.

ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>Latin.</i>		<i>English.</i>
Ante Christum*	A. C.	Before Christ
Artium Baccalaureus	A. B.	Bachelor of Arts (often B. A.)
Annus Domini	A. D.	In the year of Our Lord
Artium Magister	A. M.	Master of Arts (often M. A.)
Annus Mundi	A. M.	In the year of the world
Annus Medicorum	A. M.	In the forenoon
Annus Urbis Condite	A. U. C.	In the year after the building of the city—Rome
Baccalaureus Divinitatis	B. D.	Bachelor of Divinity
Custos Privati Sigilli	C. P. S.	Keeper of the Privy Seal
Custos Sigilli	C. S.	Keeper of the Seal
Doctor Divinitatis	D. D.	Doctor of Divinity
Exempli gratia	e. g.	For example
Regiæ Societatis Socius	R. S. S.	Fellow of the Royal Society
Regiæ Societatis Antiquarium Socius	R. S. A. S.	Fellow of the Royal Society of Antiquaries
Georgius Rex	G. R.	George the King
Id est	i. e.	That is
Jesus Hominum Salvator	J. H. S.	Jesus the Saviour of Men
Legum Doctor	L. L. D.	Doctor of Laws (often D. C. L.)
Messieurs (<i>French</i>)	Messrs.	Gentlemen
Medicinis Doctor	M. D.	Doctor of Medicine
Memorie Sacrum	M. S.	Sacred to the memory of (or S. -M.)
Nota Bene	N. B.	Note well; Take notice
Post Meridiem	P. M.	In the afternoon
Post Scriptum	P. S.	Postscript, something written after
Ultimo	Ult.	Last (month)
Et cætera	&c.	And the rest; and so forth

A.	Answer; Alexander	L. C. J.	Lord Chief Justice
Acct.	Account	Knt.	Knight
Bart.	Baronet	K. G.	Knight of the Garter
Bp.	Bishop	K. B.	Knight of the Bath
Capt.	Captain	K. C. B.	Kt. Commander of the Bath
Col.	Colonel	K. C.	Knight of the Crescent
Cr.	Creditor	K. P.	Knight of the Patrick
Dr.	Debtor; Doctor	K. T.	Knight of the Thistle
Ditto	The same	MS.	Manuscript
Viz.†	Namely	MSS.	Manuscripts
Q.	Queen; Queen	N. S.	Noon
R. N.	Royal Navy	O. S.	Old Style
Seq.	Sequence	J. P.	Justice of the Peace

* The *Latin* of these abbreviations is inserted to be got by heart, but to show the etymology of the English, as, for instance, how P. M. comes to mean afternoon, &c.

† Contracted for *videlicet*.

PRO
tri
Q
me
A
able
Th
occup
or sh
En
tain v
the r
as, A
to sh
A
suspe
of ti
feren
man.
To
the v
these

Pr
sound
Ver
aumb

* Eng
after th
disagre
it still r
† Acc
and pau
ings of t

PROSODY.

PROSODY is that part of Grammar which teaches the true pronunciation of words; comprising Accent, Quantity, Emphasis, Pause, and Tone, and the measure of verses.

Accent is the laying of a greater force on one syllable of a word than on another; as, *Surmount*.

The *quantity* of a syllable is that time which is occupied in pronouncing it. Quantity is either long or short; as *Ōn-sūme*.

Emphasis is a remarkable stress laid upon certain words in a sentence, to distinguish them from the rest, by making the meaning more apparent, as, Apply yourself more to acquire knowledge than to shew it.*

A *Pause* is either a total cessation or a short suspension of the voice, during a perceptible space of time; as, Reading—makes a full—man; conference—a ready—man; and writing—an exact—man.

Tone is a particular modulation or inflection of the voice, suited to the sense; as, How bright these glorious spirits shine !†

VERSIFICATION.

Prose is language not restrained to harmonic sounds, or to a set number of syllables.

Verse or *Poetry* is language restrained to a certain number of long and short syllables in every line.

* *Emphasis* should be made rather by *suspending* the voice a little after the emphatic word than by striking it very forcibly, which is disagreeable to a good ear. A very short pause before it would render it still more emphatical; as, reading makes a—full—man.

† *Accent* and *quantity* respect the pronunciation of words; *emphasis* and *pause* the meaning of the sentence; while *tone* refers to the feelings of the speaker.

Verse is of *two kinds*; namely, *Rhyme* and *Blank verse*. When the last syllable of every two lines has the same sound, it is called *rhyme*; but when this is not the case, it is called *blank verse*.

*Feet** are the parts into which a verse is divided, to see whether it has its just number of syllables or not.

Scanning is the measuring or dividing of a verset into the several feet of which it is composed.

All feet consist either of *two* or *three* syllables, and are reducible to eight kinds; four of two syllables, and four of three, as follow:

Dissyllables.

A *trôchêe*; as, *lôvely*. †
An *iambus*; *bêcâme*.
A *spondêe*; *vân mân*.
A *pyrrhic*; *ôn s* (bank).

Trissyllables.

A *dactyle*; as, *prôbably*.
An *amphibrach*; *dômêstic*.
An *anapaest*; *misimprôve*.
A *tribrach*; (com) *fôrtably*.

The feet in most common use are, *Iambic*, *Trochaic* and *Anapaestic*.

IAMBIC MEASURE.

Iambic measure is adapted to serious subjects, and comprises verses of several kinds; such as,

1. Of four syllables, or two feet; as,

With *râv-lah'd* ears,
Thê *môn-ârch* hêars.

* So called from the resemblance which the movement of the tongue in reading verse, bears to the motion of the feet in walking.

† A single line is called a verse. In *rhymes* two lines are called a *couplet*; and three ending with the same sound a *triple*.

‡ The marks over the vowels show that a *Trochee* consists of a *long* and a *short* syllable, and the *iambic* of a *short* and a *long*, &c.

§ In *scanning* verses, every accented syllable is called a *long* syllable; even although the sound of a vowel in pronunciation be *short*. Thus the first syllable in *verset's* is in scanning called a *long* syllable, although the vowel *e* is *short*. By *long* then is meant an *accented* syllable; and by *short*, an *unaccented* syllable.

It sometimes has an additional short syllable, making what is called a double ending; as,

Upōn-ā mōūntain,
Beside-ā fōūntain.

2. Of three iambs, or six syllables; as,

Alōft-in āw-fūl stāte,
Thē gōd-like hērō sāt.

Oūr hēarts-no lōng-ēr lan—*guish*. An additional syllable

3 Of eight syllables, or four iambic feet; as,

And māy-āt lāst-mŷ wēa-rŷ āge,
Find oūt-thē pēace-fūl hēr-mitāge.

4 Of ten syllables, or five feet; called hexameter, heroic, or tragic verses; as,

Thē stārs-shāll fādē-āwāy,—thē sūn-himself
Grōw dīm-with āge,—ānd nā-tūre sink-in yēars.

Sometimes the last line of a couplet is stretched out to twelve syllables, or six feet, and then it is called an Alexandrine verse; as,

Fōr thēē-thē lānd-in frā-grānt flōw'rs-is drēst;
Fōr thēē-thē ō-ceān smiles,—ānd smōōthes-hēr wā-vŷ breast.

5. Of verses containing alternately four and three feet; this is the measure commonly used in psalms and hymns; as,

Lēt sāints bēlōw,—with swēēt-āccōrd,
Unite-with thōse-ābōve,
In sō-lōmn lāys,—tō prāise-thēir king,
And sīng-his dŷ-īng lōve.

¶ Verses of this kind were anciently written in two lines, each containing fourteen syllables.

TROCHAIC MEASURE.

This measure is quick and lively, and comprises verses.

1. Some of one trochee and a long syllable, and some of two trochees; as,

Tūmūlt-cēase. On thē-mōūntain.
Sīng-tō-pēace. By ā-fōūntain.

2. Of two feet, or two trochees with an additional long syllable; as,

In the - days of - - old,
Stōries - plainly - - told.

3. Of three trochees, or three and an additional long syllable; as,

Whēn our - hearts are - mourning,
Lovely - lāsting - pēace of - - mind,
Swēet dē - light of - hūmān - - kind.

4. Of four trochees, or eight syllables; as,

Nōw thē - drēadful - thūndēr's - rōaring!

5. Of six trochees, or twelve syllables; as,

On ā - mōuntain, - strētch'd bē - nēath ā - hōary - willōw,
Lāy ā - shēphērd - swāin, and - viēw'd thē - rōaring - billōw

These trochaic measures that are very uncommon have been omitted.

ANAPÆSTIC MEASURE.

1. Of two anapæsts, or two and an unaccented syllable; as,

Būt his coūr - āge 'gan fail,
Fōr nō arts - could āvail.
O, then his coūr - āge 'gan fail - hīm,
For no arts - could āvail - hīm.

2. Of three anapæsts, or nine syllables; as,

O yē wōods - sprēad your brānch - ēs āpāce,
Tō your dēep - ēs - bēcōm - ēs I fl̄y;
I wōuld hide - with thē - basts - of thē chāse,
I wōuld vān - lan from ev - ēry ēye.

Sometimes a syllable is retrenched from the first foot; as,

Tē shēp - hērds sō cheer - ful and gay,
Whōse flocks - nēvēr cārē - lēssly rōam.

3.

'T
Y
S
the
On t
T
cipa
are
them
feet,
[ōpa

A
which
sense
mean

Pe
Sin
Me
All
Hy
Iro
Me

* Iamb
be cause
them. T
me is to c

3. Of four anapæsts, or twelve syllables; as,
 'Tis thē vōice-ōf thē slūg-gārd; I hēar-hīm cōmplāin,
 Yōu hāve wāk'd-mē toō sōon,-I mūst slūm-bēr āgāin.

Sometimes an additional short syllable is found at the end; as,
 On thē wārm-chēek ōf yōuth-smiles ānd rōs-es āre blānd-ing

The preceding are the different kinds of the *Principal** feet, in their more simple forms; but they are susceptible of numerous variations, by mixing them with one another, and with the *Secondary* feet, the following lines may serve as an example:—
 [*Spon. Amph. &c.*, apply only to the first line.]

Time shākes-thē stāblē-tyrānny-ōf thrōnes, &c.
 Whēre is-tō-mōrrōw?-In ānoth-ēr wōrld.
 Shē āll-night lōng-hēr ām-ōrouš dēs-cānt sūng.
 Innū-mērāblē-bēfore-th' Almigh-ty's thrōne.
 Thāt ōn-wēak wings-frōm fār-pūrsūes-yōur flight.

FIGURES OF SPEECH.

A *figure of Speech* is a mode of speaking, in which a word or sentence is to be understood in a sense different from its most common and literal meaning.

The principal Figures of Speech are,

Personification,
 Simile,
 Metaphor,
 Allegory,
 Hy-per'bō-lē,
 Irony,
 Metonymy,

'Sy-nēc'do-chē.
 Antithesis,
 Climax,
 Exclamation,
 Interrogation,
 Paralepsis,
 Apostrophe.

* *Iambus, trochee, and anapest*, may be denominated *principal feet*; because pieces of poetry may be wholly, or chiefly, formed of either of them. The others may be termed *secondary feet*; because their chief use is to diversify the numbers, and to improve the verse.

Prosopopæia, or *Personification*, is that figure of speech by which we attribute life and action to inanimate objects; as, *The sea saw it and fled.*

A *simile* expresses the resemblance that one object bears to another: as, *He shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water.*

A *metaphor* is a simile without the sign (like, or as, &c.) of comparison; as, *He shall be a tree planted by, &c.*

An *allegory* is a continuation of several metaphors, so connected in sense as to form a kind of parable or fable; thus, the people of Israel are represented under the image of a vine; *Thou hast brought a vine out of Egypt, &c.*, Ps. lxxx. 8 to 17.

An *hy-pér-bò-lè* is a figure that represents things as greater or less, better or worse, than they really are; as, when David says of Saul and Jonathan, *They were swifter than eagles, they were stronger than lions.*

Irony is a figure by which we mean quite the contrary of what we say; as, when Elijah said to the worshippers of Baal, *Cry aloud, for he is a god, &c.*

A *metonymy* is a figure by which we put the cause for the effect, or the effect for the cause; as, when we say, he reads *Milton*; we mean Milton's *Works*. *Grey hairs* should be respected, *i. e.* old age.

Synecdoché is the putting of a *part* for the *whole*, or the *whole* for a *part*, a definite number for an indefinite, &c.; as, *The waves* for the *sea*, the *head* for the *person*, and *ten thousand* for any *great number*. This figure is nearly allied to *metonymy*.

4
 fe. at
 them
 mon
 cour
 flee
 bold
 *
 stand
 place
 from
 distr
 perit
 38, 3
 Ea
 some
 if th
 of G
 In
 emoti
 propo
 and
 shall
 Pa
 the s
 declar
 was c
 in pr
 ing, n
 that l
 consti
 Ap
 address
 swallo
 sting?

Antithesis, or *contrast*, is a figure by which different or contrary objects are contrasted, to make them show one another to advantage; thus, Solomon contrasts the timidity of the wicked with the courage of the righteous, when he says, *The wicked flee when no man pursueth, but the righteous are bold as a lion.*

* *Climax* is the heightening of all the circumstances of an object or action, which we wish to place in a strong light: as, *Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? Shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword? Nay, &c.*—See also Rom. viii. 38, 39.

Exclamation is a figure that is used to express some strong emotion of the mind; as, *Oh the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God!*

Interrogation is a figure by which we express the emotion of our mind, and enliven our discourse by proposing questions; thus, *Hath the Lord said it? and shall he not do it? Hath he spoken it? and shall he not make it good?*

Paralepsis, or *omission*, is a figure by which the speaker pretends to conceal what he is really declaring and strongly enforcing; as, Horatius was once a very promising young gentleman, but in process of time he became so addicted to gaming, *not to mention his drunkenness and debauchery*, that he soon exhausted his estate and ruined his constitution.

Apostrophe is a turning off from the subject to address some other person or thing; as, *Death is swallowed up in victory: O death, where is thy sting?*

* Climax, Amplification, Enumeration, or Gradation.

QUESTIONS ON THE TEXT.

What is English Grammar?
 Into how many parts is it divided?
 What does Orthography teach?
 What is a letter, &c.?
 Of what does Etymology treat?
 How many parts of speech are there?

ARTICLE.

What is an article?
 How many articles are there?
 Where is a used?
 Where is an used?

NOUN—NUMBER.

What is a noun?
 How are nouns varied?
 What is number?
 How many numbers have nouns?
 How is the plural generally formed?
 How do nouns ending in *s*, *sh*, *ch*, *z*, or *o*, form the plural?
 How do nouns in *y* form the plural?
 How do nouns in *f*, or *fe*, form the plural?
 What is the plural of *man*, &c.?

GENDER.

What is meant by gender?
 How many genders are there?
 What does the masculine denote?
 What does the feminine denote?
 What does the neuter denote?
 What is the feminine of bachelor, &c.?

CASE.

What is case?
 How many cases have nouns?
 Which two are alike?
 How is the possessive singular formed?
 How is the possessive plural formed?
 Decline the word *lady*.

ADJECTIVES.

What is an adjective?
 How many degrees of comparison have adjectives?
 How is the comparative formed?
 How is the superlative formed?
 How are dissyllables in *y* compared?
 Compare the adjective *good*.

PRONOUNS.

What is a pronoun?
 Which is the pronoun in the sentence, *He is a good boy*?
 How many kinds of pronouns are there?
 Decline the personal pronoun *I*?
 Decline *thou*—backwards, &c.;

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

What is a relative pronoun?
 Which is the relative in the example?
 Which is the antecedent?
 Repeat the relative pronouns.
 Decline *who*.
 How is *who* applied?
 To what is *which* applied?
 How is *that* used?
 What sort of a relative is *what*?

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS

How many sorts of adjective pronouns are there?
 Repeat the possessive pronouns.
 Repeat the distributive pronouns.
 Repeat the demonstrative.
 Repeat the indefinite.

ON THE OBSERVATIONS.

Before which of the vowels is *e* used?
 What is a called?
 What is *the* called?
 In what sense is a noun taken with out an article to limit it?
 Is *a* used before nouns in both numbers?
 How is *the* used?

NOUNS.

How do nouns ending in *ch*, sound ing *k*, form the plural?
 How do nouns in *io*, &c., form the plural?
 How do nouns ending in *f* form the plural?
 Repeat those nouns that do not change *f* or *fe* into *ves* in the plural.
 What do you mean by proper nouns?
 What are common nouns?
 What are collective nouns?
 What do you call abstract nouns?

QUESTIONS ON THE TEXT AND OBSERVATIONS.

Obs. Continued.

What do you call *verbal nouns*?
 What nouns are generally *singular*?
 Repeat some of those nouns that are used only in the *plural*.
 Repeat some of those nouns that are *alike* in both numbers.
 What is the singular of *sheep*?
 What *gender* is *parent*, &c.!

ADJECTIVES.

What does the *positive* express, &c.?
 How are adjectives of *one syllable* generally compared?
 How are adjectives of *more than one syllable* compared?
 How are dissyllables ending with *e* final often compared?
 Is *y* always changed into *i* before *er* and *est*?
 How are *some* adjectives compared?
 Do *all* adjectives admit of comparison?
 How are *much* and *many* applied?
 When is the final consonant *doubled* before adding *er* and *est*?

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

When are *who*, *which*, and *what* called *interrogatives*?
 Of what *number* and *person* is the relative?

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

When are *his* and *her* possessive pronouns?
 What may *former* and *latter* be called?
 When is *that* a *relative pronoun*?
 When is *that* a *demonstrative*?
 When is *that* a *conjunction*?
 How many *cases* have *himself*, *herself*, &c.!

VERB.

What is a *verb*?
 How many *kinds* of verbs are there?
 What does a verb *active* express?
 What does a verb *passive* express?
 What does a verb *neuter* express?
 Repeat the *auxiliary* verbs.
 How is a verb *declined*?
 How many *moods* have verbs?

ADVERB.

What is an *adverb*?
 Name the *adverbs* in the example.
 What part of speech is the generality of those words that end in *ly*?
 What parts of speech are the compounds of *where*, *there*, &c.?
 Are adverbs ever compared?
 When are *more* and *most* *adjectives*, and when are they *adverbs*?

PREPOSITION.

What is a *preposition*?
 How many begin with *a*?
 Repeat them.
 How many begin with *b*?
 Repeat them, &c.
 What *case* does a preposition require after it?
 When is *before* a preposition, and when is it an adverb?

CONJUNCTION.

What is a *conjunction*?
 How many *kinds* of conjunctions are there?
 Repeat the *copulative*.
 Repeat the *disjunctive*.

INTERJECTION.

What is an *interjection*?

NOTE.—As these are only the *leading* questions on the different part of speech, many more may be asked, "*visa voce*." Their distances from the answer will oblige the pupil to attend to the connection between every question and its respective answer. The observations that have corresponding questions are to be read, but not committed to memory.

FRENCH AND LATIN PHRASES.

As the following words and phrases from the French and Latin frequently occur in English authors, an explanation of them has been inserted here, for the convenience of those who are unacquainted with those languages. Let none, however, imagine, that by doing this I intend to encourage the use of them in English composition. On the contrary, I disapprove of it, and aver, that to express an idea in a foreign language, which can be expressed with equal perspicuity in our own, 's not only pedantic, but highly improper. Such words and phrases, by being frequently used, may, notwithstanding the uncouthness of their sound and appearance, gradually incorporate with our language, and ultimately diminish its original excellence, and impair its native beauty.

Aide-de-camp, **äd-de-kong*, an assistant to a general.

A la bonne heure, a la bon oor', *luckily; in good time.*

Affaire de coeur, *af-fär' de koor*, a love affair; an amour.

A la mode, a la möd', according to the fashion.

A-fin, a-fing', to the end.

Apropos, ap-prö-pö', to the purpose; opportunely.

Au fond, ä fong', to the bottom, or main point.

Auto da fé, ä-to-da-fä, (*Portuguese*) burning of heretics.

Bagatelle, bag-a-tel', a trifle.

Beau monde, bö möngd', the gay world; people of fashion

Beaux esprits, böz es-pré', men of wit.

Billet-doux, bil-le-dü', a love letter.

Bon mot, bong mö, a piece of wit; a jest; a quibble.

Bon ton, bong tong, in high fashion.

Bon-gré, mal-gré, bon-grä, &c., with a good or ill grace; whether the party will or not.

Bonjour, bong zhär, good day; good morning.

Boudoir, bü-dwär', a small private apartment.

Carte blanche, kart blangsh', a blank; unconditional terms.

Chateau, sha-tö', a country seat.

Chef-d'oeuvre, shée doo'ver, a master-piece.

Ci-devant, sä-de-vang', formerly.

Comme il faut, com-il fö, as it should be.

Con amore, con-a-mo'rä, (*Italian*) with love; with the partiality of affection.

Congé d'élire, kong-zhä de lër', leave to elect or choose.

Coup de grâce, kü-de-gräss', a stroke of mercy; the finishing stroke.

Short vowels are left unmarked—ä is equal to u in rule; ä to a in art; eo, as used here, has no correspondent sound in English; it is equal to u as pronounced by the common people in many counties of Scotland, in the words *use, soot, &c.*—ä is equal to ä in all.

* Ä is not exactly a long here; it is perhaps as near e in met, as a in make, but a will not be so readily mistaken. It is impossible to convey the pronunciation accurately without the *longue*.

- Coup-d'œil, kû-däil, a *peep*; a *glance of the eye*.
 Coup-de-main, kû-de-mang', a *sudden or bold enterprise*.
 Début, de-boo', *first appearance in public*.
 Dernier ressort, dern'-yâ-res-sor', *the last shift or resource*.
 Dépôt, dê-pô', a *storehouse or magazine*.
 Double entendre, dôbl ang-tang' der, *double meaning, one in an immodest sense*.
 Douceur, dû-soor', a *present or bribe*.
 Dieu et mon droit, dyoo' e-mong drwâ, *God and my right*.
 Eclat, e-klâ, *splendour*; *with applause*.
 Elève, el-äv', *pupil*.
 En-bon-point, ang bong-pwang', *in good condition*; *jolly*.
 En masse, ang mâss', *in a body or mass*.
 En passant, ang-pas-sang', *by the way*; *in passing*; *by the by*.
 Ennui, eng-nûê, *wearisomeness*; *lassitude*; *tediousness*.
 Faux pas, fô-pâ, a *slip*; *misconduct*.
 Fête, fât, a *feast or entertainment*.
 Fraoas, fra-câ, *bustle*; a *slight quarrel*; *more ado about the thing than it is worth*.
 Honi soit qui mal y pense, hō-nê-swâ' kē-mâl ê-pangs', *evil be to him that evil thinks*.
 Hauteur, hâ-toor', *haughtiness*.
 Je ne sais quoi, zhe ne sâ kwâ, *I know not what*.
 Jeu de mots, zhoo de mô', a *play upon words*.
 Jeu d'esprit, zhoo de-sprô', a *display of wit*; *witticism*.
 Mal-a-propos, mal ap-ro-pô', *unfit*; *out of time or place*.
 Mauvaise honte, mo-vâs-hônt', *false modesty*.
 Mot du guêt, mô doo gâ', a *watchword*.
 Naïveté, na-iv-tâ', *ingenuousness*, *simplicity*, *innocence*.
 Outré, ô-trâ', *eccentric*; *blustering*; *wild*; *not gentle*.
 Petit-maitre, pe-tô mât'er, a *beau*; a *fop*.
 Protégé, pro-tâ-zhâ', a *person patronized and protected*.
 Rouge, rûzh, *red*; or a *kind of red paint for the face*.
 Sans, sang, *without*.
 Sang-froid, sang frwâ, *cold blood*; *indifference*.
 Savant, sa-vang, a *wise or learned man*.
 Soi-disant, swâ-de-zang', *self-styled*; *pretended*.
 Tapis, ta-pê, *the carpet*.
 Trait, trâ, *feature*, *touch*, *arrow*, *shaft*.
 Tête-à-tête, tât-a-tât, *face to face*, a *private conversation*.
 Unique, oo-nêk', *singular*, *the only one of his kind*.
 Un bel esprit, ong bel e-sprô', a *pretender to wit*, a *virtuoso*.
 Valet-de-chambre, va lâ de sham'ber, a *valet or footman*.
 Vive le roi, vêve le rwâ, *long live the king*.

The pronunciation has not been added to the Latin, because every letter is sounded,—*c* final being like *y* in *army*.

1. A long or short over a vowel denotes both the accented syllable and the quantity of the vowel in *English*.

2. *Ti, oi, or si*, before a vowel, sounds *she*.

3. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first.

Ab initio, from the beginning.

Ab urbe condita (A. U. C.)
from the building of the city.

Ad captandum vulgus, to ensnare the vulgar.

Ad infinitum, to infinity, without end.

Ad libitum, at pleasure.

Ad referendum, for consideration.

Ad valorem, according to value.

A fortiori, with stronger reason, much more.

Alias (ā-le-as), otherwise.

Alibi (al-i-bi), elsewhere.

Alma mater, the university.

Anglice, in English.

Anno Dōmini, in the year of Our Lord—A. D.

Anno Mundi, in the year of the world—A. M.

A posteriori, from the effect, from the latter, from behind.

A priori, from the former, from before, from the nature or cause.

Arcānum, a secret.

Arcāna impērii, state secrets.

Argumentum ad hominem, an appeal to the professed principles or practices of the adversary.

Argumentum ad iudicium, an appeal to the common sense of mankind.

Argumentum ad fidem, an appeal to our faith.

Argumentum ad pōpulum, an appeal to the people.

Argumentum ad passiones, an appeal to the passions.

Audi alteram partem, hear both sides.

Bona fide, in reality, in good

Contra, against.

Cacōēthes scribendi, an itch for writing.

Cæteris paribus, other circumstances being equal.

Caput mōrtuum, the worthless remains, dead head.

Compos mentis, in one's senses.

Cum privilegio, with privilege.

Dāta, things granted.

De facto, in fact, in reality.

De jure, in right, in law.

Dei Grātia, by the grace or favour of God.

Desunt cætera, the rest are wanting.

Dōmine dirige nos, O Lord, direct us.

Desiderātum, something desirable or much wanted.

Dramatis personæ, characters represented.

Durante vita, during life.

Durante placito, during pleasure.

Ergo, therefore.

Errāta, errors—Erratum, an error.

Excerpta, extracts.

Esto perpētua, let it be perpetual.

Et cætera, and the rest, (&c.)

Exempli grātia, as for example; contracted E. G.

Ex officio, officially, by virtue of office.

Ex parte, on one side.

Ex tempore, without premeditation.

Fac simile, exact copy or resemblance.

Fiat, let it be done or made.

Flagrante bello, during hostilities.

Grati

Hora

Hum

ma

Ibide

Idem

Id es

Ignor

ten

In loc

Inipr

In ten

In pr

son

In sta

Ipsa o

Ipsa t

Ipsa

Item,

Jure

Jure l

Jus g

Locum

Labor

cam

Licent

Lapēu

Magn

bas

Meme

Memo

rec

Meum

Multu

grec

Nemo

shal

Ne plu

bey

Nolent

Non co

min

Nisi i

Eorū

in v

Ne qu

thing

Nem.

cent

Nem. o

non

Ore ten

O tem

O th

Omnes

Passim

Per se

Prima

right

- Gratis, for nothing.
 Hora fugit, the hour or time flies.
 Humanum est errare, to err is human.
 Ibidem, (ib.) in the same place.
 Idem, the same.
 Id est, (i. e.) that is.
 Ignoramus, a vain uninformed pretender.
 In loco, in this place.
 In primis, in the first place.
 In terrorem, as a warning.
 In propria persona, in his own person.
 In statu quo, in the former state.
 Ipse dixit, on his sole assertion.
 Ipso facto, by the act itself.
 Ipso jure, by the law itself.
 Item, also, or article.
 Jure divino, by divine right.
 Jure humano, by human law.
 Jus gentium, the law of nations.
 Locum tenens, deputy substitute.
 Labor omnia vincit, labour overcomes everything.
 Licentia vatum, a poetical licence.
 Lapsus linguae, a slip of the tongue.
 Magna charta, the great charter, the basis of our laws and liberties.
 Memento mori, remember death.
 Memorabilia, matters deserving of record.
 Meum et tuum, mine and thine.
 Multum in parvo, much in little, a great deal in a few words.
 Nemo me impune lacesset, no one shall provoke me with impunity.
 Ne plus ultra, no further, nothing beyond.
 Nolens volens, willing or unwilling.
 Non compos mentis, not of a sound mind.
 Nisi Dominus frustra, unless the Lord be with us, all efforts are in vain.
 Ne quid nimis, too much of one thing is good for nothing.
 Nem. con. (for nemini contradicente) none opposing.
 Nem. dis. (for nemine dissentiente) none disagreeing.
 Ore tenus, from the mouth.
 O tempora, O mores, O the times, O the manners.
 Omnes, all. Onus, burden.
 Passim, everywhere.
 Per se, by itself alone.
 Prima facie, at first view, or at first sight.
- Posse comitatus, the power of the county.
 Primum mobile, the main spring.
 Pro and con, for and against.
 Pro bono publico, for the good of the public.
 Pro loco et tempore, for the place and time.
 Pro re nata, as occasion serves.
 Pro rege, lege, et grege, for the king, the constitution, and the people.
 Quo animo, with what mind.
 Quo jure, by what right.
 Quoad, as far as.
 Quondam, formerly.
 Res publica, the commonwealth.
 Resurgam, I shall rise again.
 Rex, a king. Regina, a queen.
 Senatus consultum, a decree of the senate.
 Seriatim, in regular order.
 Sine die, without specifying any particular day.
 Sine qua non, an indispensable prerequisite or condition.
 Statu quo, the state in which it was.
 Sub poena, under a penalty.
 Sui generis, the only one of his kind, singular.
 Supra, above.
 Summum bonum, the chief good.
 Tria juncta in uno, three joined in one.
 Toties quoties, as often as.
 Una voce, with one voice, unanimously.
 Ultimus, the last (contracted ult.)
 Utile dulce, the useful with the pleasant.
 Uti possidetis, as ye possess, or present possession.
 Verbatim, word for word.
 Versus, against.
 Vade mecum, go with me; a book fit for being a constant companion.
 Vale, farewell.
 Via, by the way.
 Vice, in the room of.
 Vico versa, the reverse.
 Vide, see (contracted into vid.)
 Vide ut supra, see as above.
 Vis poetica, poetic genius.
 Viva voce, orally; by word of mouth.
 Vox populi, the voice of the people.
 Vulgo, commonly.

INDEX TO THE RULES OF SYNTAX

NOUNS.		ADVERBS.	
	PAGE		PAGE
Two or more nouns in the singular.....	83	Of the position of adverbs,.....	102
Two nouns disjoined, &c.....	83	Adjectives not used as adverbs,.....	103
Noun of multitude.....	87	Of hence, thence, there, &c.*... ib.	
One noun governs another,.....	86	Double comparatives improper,.....	100
Of a clause between them,.....	109	Two negatives improper,.....	101
Several nouns in the possessive,*.....	86	The comp. degree requires <i>than</i> ,.....	104
Singular nouns of diff. persons, 96			
A singular and a plural noun, 97			
A noun and its pron. improper, 98			
PRONOUNS.		PREPOSITIONS.	
Pronouns agree in gender, &c... 93		Prepositions govern objective, 82	
Each, every, other, agree, &c... 106		— should be placed before the relative,*..... 82	
That and this, former, latter,* 107		Diff. preps. with the same noun, †..... ib	
Relative agrees with its antec.. 94		<i>Zt</i> , <i>at</i> , <i>in</i> , before names of places,..... 110	
Relatives <i>that</i> and <i>which</i> , †..... ib.		Words requiring appropriate prepositions..... 111	
Relative preceded by two antecedents of different persons..... 95			
Rel. should be placed next ant. *ib.			
Who after <i>than</i> ,..... *105			
When a pronoun refers to two words of different persons, †..... 97			
Of <i>whichever</i> , &c.*..... 109			
VERB.		CONJUNCTIONS.	
A verb agrees with its nom..... 80		Conjunctions couple like moods,..... 84	
An active verb governs,..... 81		— require subjunctive mood,..... 80	
Neuter verbs do not govern an objective, †..... ib.		Least and that, †..... ib.	
Active verbs admit of no preposition, †..... ib.		If, with but following, †..... ib.	
One verb governs another,..... 85		Conjunctions in pairs,..... 90	
The infinite is used as a nom... 99		— <i>Than</i> and <i>as</i> ,..... 105	
Verbs related in point of time, 108			
The verb <i>to be</i> has the same case,..... 88			
PARTICIPLE.		VARIOUS THINGS.	
Participle used as a noun,..... 91		Interjections,..... 110	
A possessive pronoun, before the present participle,..... †91		General Rule,..... 114	
A noun before the present participle..... †91		Use of the articles,..... 115	
Past Part. is used after <i>have</i> and <i>and</i> ,..... 92		Ellipsis is frequently admitted,..... 110	
		— improper,..... 117	
		Construction,..... 118	
		Promiscuous Exercises on Syntax,..... 119	
		Miscellaneous observations,..... 141	
		When to use capitals,..... 143	
		Prosody,..... 165	
		Of versification,..... ib.	
		Figures of speech,..... 169	
		Questions on Etymology,..... 172	
		French and Latin phrases,..... 174	

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE preceding Grammar, owing to the uncommon precision and brevity of the Definitions, Rules, and Notes, is not only better adapted to the capacity of children than the generality of those styled Introductory Grammars, but it is so extensively provided with exercises of every sort, that it will entirely supersede the use of Mr. Murray's *Larger Grammar and Exercises*; for it is a mere *outline*, like his *Abridgement*, which contains only about *seven* pages of exercises on *bad* Grammar. This contains more than *sixty*. This contains a *complete course* of Grammar, and supersedes the use of any other book of the kind.

In short; by abridging every subject of minor importance; by omitting discussion on the numberless points about which grammarians differ; by rendering the rules and definitions more perspicuous, and at the same time abridging them more than *one-half*; by selecting short sentences on *bad* grammar; by leaving few broken lines, and printing them close together—as many exercises under each rule of syntax are compressed into this epitome as there are in Mr. Murray's volume of *Exercises*; so that the use of his Abridgement, his larger Grammar, and that of his Exercises, are completely superseded by this little volume at 1s. 6d.; while at the same time, the learner will acquire as much knowledge of grammar with this in *six* months, as with all those volumes in *twelve*.

The truth of this, as well as the unspeakable advantage of having the Grammar and Exercises in *one* volume, teachers will perceive at a glance; but as *parents* may not so quickly perceive the superior brevity and accuracy of the rules, it may not be improper to assist them a little, by comparing a few of the rules in this with those of Mr. Murray's: thus,

Mr. Murray's Rules.

Rule II.—Two or more nouns, &c., in the singular number, joined together by a copulative conjunction expressed or understood, must have verbs, nouns, and pronouns agreeing with them in the plural number; as, "Socrates and Plato were wise; they were the most eminent philosophers of Greece." "The sun that rolls over our heads, the food that we receive, the rest that we enjoy, daily *admonish* us of a superior and superintending power."—p. 143.

Correspondent Rules in this.

Rule IV.—Two or more singular nouns, coupled with *and*, require a verb and pronoun in the plural number; as, James and John are good boys, for they are busy.—p. 83.

* This rule is not only vague, but incorrect; for a means any one now any copulative conjunction will not combine the agency of two or more into one; none but *and* will do that.—Mr. M.'s third rule is equally vague.

Mr. Murray's Rules.

Rule III.—The conjunction disjunctive has an effect contrary to that of the conjunction copulative; for, as the verb, noun, or pronoun, is referred to the preceding terms taken separately, it must be in the singular number; as, "Ignorance or negligence *has* caused this mistake;" "John, James, or Joseph, *intends* to accompany me;" "There *is* in many minds neither knowledge nor understanding."—p. 146.

Rule IV.—A noun of multitude, or signifying many, may have a verb or pronoun agreeing with it, either of the singular or plural number; yet not without regard to the import of the word* as conveying unity or plurality of idea; as, "The meeting *was* large;" "The Parliament *is* dissolved;" "The nation *is* powerful;" "The people *do not* consider; *they* have not known me;" "The multitude *eagerly pursue* pleasure as *their* chief good;" "The council *were* divided in *their* sentiment."—p. 147.

Rule XIX.—Some conjunctions require the indicative, some the subjunctive mood after them. It is a general rule, that when something contingent or doubtful is implied, the subjunctive ought to be used; as, "If I *were* to write, he would not regard it;" "He will not be pardoned *unless he repent*."

Conjunctions that are of a positive and absolute nature, require the indicative mood: "As *virtue advances*, so vice *recedes*;" "He *is* healthy, because he *is* temperate."—p. 195.

Corresponding Rules in this.

Two or more singular nouns separated by *or* or *nor*, require verb and pronoun in the singular; as, James or John *is* first.—p. 88.

Rule VIII.—When a noun of multitude conveys unity of idea, the verb and pronoun should be singular; as, The class *was* large.

When a noun of multitude conveys plurality of idea, the verb and pronoun should be plural; as, My people *do not* consider; *they* have not known me.—p. 87.

Rule X.—Sentences that imply contingency and futurity, require the subjunctive mood; as, *If* he be alone, give him the letter.

When contingency and futurity are not implied, the indicative ought to be used; as, *If* he speaks as he thinks he may safely be trusted.—p. 89.

* The second part of this rule is a flat contradiction of the first. The first says the verb and pronoun may be either of the singular or plural number; the second says, No; "Not without regard to the import of the word," &c.

† It is easy to explain *contingency* and *futurity*, but what is a *positive* and *absolute* conjunction?

By the Author's Key to this Grammar, a grown-up person, though he had never learned Grammar before, may easily teach himself.

his.
noun:
quire
singu-
first.—

oun of
f' idea,
uld be
large
le con-
rb and
as, My
y have

imply
quire
f' he
turity
cative
peaks
ly be

The
olural
ort of
stices

WN-
mar

~~unreadable~~



deacon.
Address the
thus; To
iversity of
Rev. Doct.
R., Profess
If a Clergy
&c.,—*Rev.*
Those who s
too: thus,
University
title, it ma
fessor of, &
Magistrates,
of Parliam
have *M.P.*
circumstan

* It seems to
read or not. In
his own honor
use the *Rev. Mr.*
recollect whether
would look bette
thus, *The Rev.* -
after Reverend, b
sary on the back
the *inside*, left
in addressing *bill*

